

# CITROËN

## C5 AIRCROSS SUV

**HANDBOOK**



# Access to the Handbook



## MOBILE APPLICATIONS

Install the **Scan MyCitröen** application (content available offline).

Also available in the **MyCitröen App** application.



## ONLINE

View or download the handbook at the following address:

<http://service.citroen.com/ACddb/>



Scan this QR Code for direct access.

Select:

- the language,
- the vehicle and body style,
- the issue period of the handbook corresponding to the date of 1<sup>st</sup> registration of the vehicle.



This symbol indicates the latest information available.

# Welcome

---

Thank you for choosing Citroën C5 Aircross SUV.


This document contains the key information and recommendations you will need to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety. We strongly recommend familiarising yourself with it, as well as the Maintenance and Warranty Guide.

Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are for guidance only.

Automobiles CITROËN reserves the right to modify the technical specifications, equipment and accessories without having to update this document.

If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Handbook** is passed on to the new owner.

 For any work on your vehicle, contact a qualified workshop that has the required technical information, skills and equipment, all of which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

## Key



Safety warning



Additional information



Environmental protection feature



Left-hand drive vehicle



Right-hand drive vehicle



Location of equipment/button indicated using a black area





Memorising speeds	119
Highway Driver Assist	119
Adaptive cruise control	120
Lane positioning assist	123
Active Safety Brake with Collision Risk Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance	127
Distraction detection	130
Active lane departure warning system	131
Blind spot monitoring	135
Active Blind Spot Detection	136
Parking sensors	136
Top Rear Vision - Top 360 Vision	138
Park Assist	142

**Practical information 7**

Compatibility of fuels	147
Refuelling	147
Misfuel prevention (Diesel)	148
Rechargeable hybrid system	149
Charging the traction battery (Rechargeable hybrid)	155
Towing device	158
Energy economy mode	161
Snow chains	162
Very cold climate screen	162
Roof bars	163
Bonnet	164
Engine compartment	165
Checking levels	165
Checks	167
AdBlue® (BlueHDi)	169
Free-wheeling	171
Advice on care and maintenance	172

<b>In the event of a breakdown 8</b>	
Warning triangle	175
Running out of fuel (Diesel)	175
Tool kit	175
Temporary puncture repair kit	177
Spare wheel	179
Changing a bulb	182
Fuses	185
12 V battery/Accessory batteries	185
Towing the vehicle	191

**Technical data 9**

Engine technical data and towed loads	193
Petrol engines	194
Diesel engines	195
Rechargeable hybrid engine	196
Dimensions	197
Identification markings	197

**CITROËN Connect Radio 10**

First steps	198
Steering mounted controls	199
Menus	200
Applications	201
Radio	201
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	203
Media	203
Telephone	205
Settings	208
Frequently asked questions	209

**CITROËN Connect Nav 11**

First steps	211
-------------	-----

Steering mounted controls	212
Menus	212
Voice commands	214
Navigation	217
Connected navigation	220
Applications	222
Radio	225
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	226
Media	226
Telephone	228
Settings	230
Frequently asked questions	232

**Event data recorders 12**

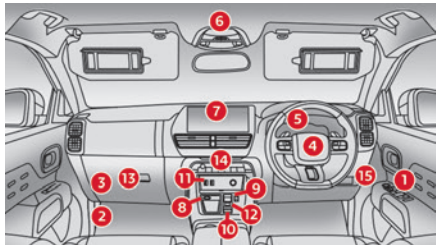
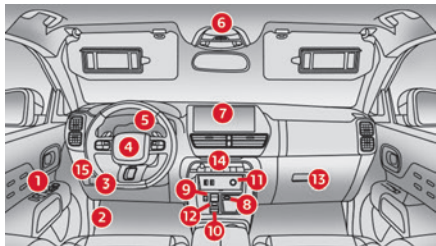
**Alphabetical index ■**

**Appendix ■**

## Presentation

These illustrations and descriptions are intended as a guide. The presence and location of some elements vary depending on the version or trim level.

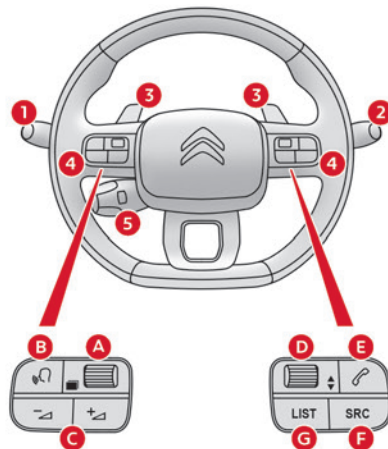
### Instruments and controls



1. Door mirrors  
Electric windows
2. Bonnet release
3. Dashboard fuses
4. Horn  
Driver front airbag

5. Instrument panel
6. Courtesy lamp  
Warning lamps display for seat belts and front passenger airbag  
Sunroof and blind controls  
Interior rear view mirror/Driving in **Electric** mode indicator LED  
Emergency and assistance call buttons
7. Touch screen with CITROËN Connect Radio or CITROËN Connect Nav
8. Switching the engine on/off
9. Gearbox
10. Electric parking brake
11. Wireless smartphone charger  
12 V socket/USB sockets
12. Choice of driving mode  
Hill Assist Descent Control  
Advanced Grip Control
13. Glove box  
Front passenger airbag deactivation switch
14. Central control bar (lower and upper)
15. Side control bar

### Steering-mounted controls



1. External lighting controls/Direction indicators
2. Wiper controls/Screenwash/Trip computer
3. Automatic gearbox control paddles
4. Audio system controls
- A. Select the instrument panel display mode
- B. Voice commands
- C. Decrease/Increase volume
- D. Select previous/next media  
Confirm a selection
- E. Access the **Telephone** menu  
Manage calls
- F. Select an audio source
- G. Display the list of radio stations/audio tracks

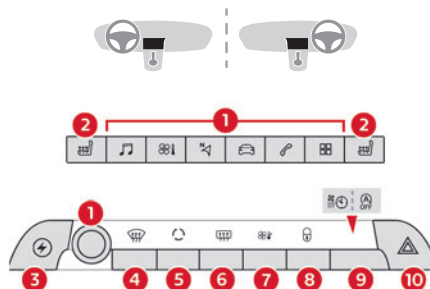
5. Controls for Cruise control/Speed limiter/  
Adaptive cruise control

### Side control bar



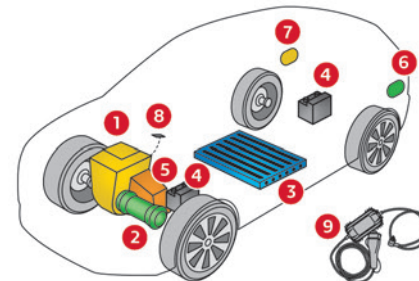
1. Headlamp beam height adjustment
2. Active lane departure warning system
3. Lane positioning assist
4. Heated windscreen
5. Alarm
6. Electric child lock
7. Opening the fuel filler flap

### Central control bar (lower and upper)



1. Access the touch screen menus (CITROËN Connect Radio or CITROËN Connect Nav)
2. Heated seats
3. Access the **Energy** menu
4. Windscreen and front windows demisting
5. Manual recirculation of interior air
6. Rear screen demisting/de-icing
7. Ventilation off
8. Central locking
9. Stop & Start or temperature pre-conditioning operation indicator lamp
10. Hazard warning lamps

## Rechargeable hybrid system



1. Petrol engine
2. Electric motor
3. Traction battery
4. 12 V accessories batteries
5. 8-speed electric automatic gearbox (e-EAT8)
6. Charging flap
7. Fuel filler flap
8. Driving mode selector
9. Domestic charging cable

The **rechargeable hybrid** technology combines two sources of energy: that of the petrol engine and that of the electric motor, which drive the front wheels (traction).

The engine and the motor can operate alternately or simultaneously, according to the driving mode selected and the driving conditions. The electric power alone provides the mobility of the vehicle in **Electric** mode, and in **Hybrid**

mode in case of moderate demand. It assists the petrol engine during starting and acceleration phases.

The electric power is supplied by a rechargeable traction battery.

## Labels

"Ease of use and comfort - Front fittings - Wireless smartphone charger" section:



"Lighting and visibility - Exterior lighting control stalk" and "In the event of a breakdown - Changing a bulb" sections:



"Safety - Child seats - Deactivating the front passenger airbag" section:



"Safety - ISOFIX mountings" section:



"Driving - Electric parking brake" section:



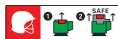
"Driving - Stop & Start" section:



"Practical information - Compatibility of fuels" section:



"Practical information - Rechargeable hybrid system" section:



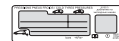
"Practical information - Charging the traction battery (Rechargeable hybrid)" section:



"Practical information - Bonnet" section:



"In the event of a breakdown - Temporary puncture repair kit" section:



"In the event of a breakdown - Spare wheel" section:



"In the event of a breakdown - 12 V battery/ Accessory batteries" section:





## Eco-driving

Eco-driving refers to a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise the vehicle's energy consumption (fuel and/or electricity) and CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.

### Optimise your use of the gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up promptly. While accelerating, change up early.

With an automatic gearbox, favour automatic mode. Do not depress the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear shift indicator prompts you to engage the most suitable gear. Whenever this indication is displayed on the instrument panel, follow it straight away.

With an automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

### Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal and press the accelerator gradually. These practices help to save on energy consumption, reduce CO<sub>2</sub> emissions and decrease general traffic noise.

Favour the use of the "Eco" driving mode.

With an EAT8 gearbox, with the gear selector in mode **D**, and except in Sport mode, favour "free-wheeling" by gradually lifting your foot fully off the accelerator pedal in order to save fuel.

When the traffic is flowing smoothly, select the cruise control.

### Control the use of electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning. At speeds above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.

Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (e.g. sunroof blind, window blinds).

Unless automatically regulated, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.

Switch off the demisting and defrosting functions, if they are not managed automatically.

Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Adapt your use of the headlamps and/or foglamps to the level of visibility, in accordance with current legislation in the country in which you are driving.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter (other than in severe wintry conditions: temperature below -23°C). The vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, avoid connecting your multimedia devices (e.g. film, music, video game) to help reduce the consumption of energy. Disconnect all portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

### Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle. Place the heaviest items in the boot as close as possible to the rear seats.

Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and minimise wind resistance (e.g. roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer). Preferably, use a roof box.

Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and fit summer tyres.

Avoid using Sport mode for too long, in order to limit your energy consumption.

### Comply with the servicing instructions

Check tyre pressures regularly, with the tyres cold, referring to the label in the door aperture on the driver's side.

Carry out this check in particular:

- before a long journey.
- at each change of season.
- after a long period out of use.

Do not forget the spare wheel and, where applicable, the tyres on your trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (e.g. engine oil, oil filter, air filter, passenger compartment filter, etc.). Observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.

With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system has a fault, your vehicle will emit pollution. Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to restore your vehicle's nitrogen oxide emissions to legal levels.

When filling the fuel tank, do not continue after the third cut-out of the nozzle, to avoid overflow. You will only see the fuel consumption of your new vehicle settle down to a consistent average after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometres).

### **Optimising the driving range (rechargeable hybrid vehicles)**

Connect the vehicle as soon as possible.

Favour the **ECO** zone of the power indicator by driving smoothly and at a steady speed.

Anticipate slowing down as much as possible and, if possible, favour decelerations with regenerative braking mode activated (power indicator in the **CHARGE** zone).

With the vehicle connected, carry out temperature pre-conditioning before setting off.

To optimise consumption during a journey:

- ▶ Programme a destination in the vehicle's GPS navigation system.
- ▶ Select the **Hybrid** driving mode.
- ▶ Make sure that the battery charge level is close to maximum.
- ▶ Do not use the e-Save function while driving.
- ▶ Use the heating/air conditioning system wisely.

## Driver information

### Instrument panel

The instrument panel displays all the information the driver needs about the status of the vehicle's various systems.

This information appears in the form of warning and indicator lamps and messages.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the instrument panel may be either:

- Analogue dials with an LCD or matrix display.
- A fully digital display.

### Instrument panel with dials



### Dials

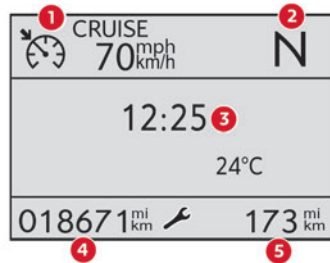
1. Speedometer (mph or km/h)
2. Fuel gauge
3. Engine coolant temperature gauge
4. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm)

### 5. Display screen

## Control buttons

- A. Resetting the service indicator  
Alert log display  
Reminder of servicing information or the remaining range associated with AdBlue® and the SCR system (miles or km)  
Tyre pressure status information display
- B. General lighting dimmer
- C. Resetting the trip distance recorder

## Display



1. Cruise control or speed limiter settings  
Speed suggested by the Road signs recognition
2. Gear shift indicator and/or selector position, gear and Sport mode indicator with an automatic gearbox

3. Display area: alert messages or state of functions, trip computer, digital speedometer (mph or km/h), range associated with the AdBlue® and the SCR system (miles or km), etc.
4. Service indicator, then total distance recorder (miles or km)  
These functions are displayed in turn when the ignition is switched on
5. Trip distance recorder (miles or km)

## Digital instrument panel

This instrument panel can be customised.

The content and availability of information depends on the display mode selected and the vehicle's equipment.

Example in the "DIALS" display mode:





1. Fuel gauge  
Remaining fuel range (km or miles)  
(Rechargeable hybrid)
2. Trip computer
3. Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm) (Petrol or Diesel)  
Power indicator (Rechargeable hybrid)
4. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h)
5. Cruise control or speed limiter settings
6. Display of speed limit signs
7. Selector position and gear on automatic gearbox  
Gear shift indicator  
Driving mode selected
8. Coolant temperature indicator (°C) (Petrol or Diesel)  
Battery charge level and remaining range (miles or km) (Rechargeable hybrid)
9. Total distance recorder (miles or km)
10. Trip distance recorder (miles or km)

## Control button

- A.** Short press: display the alerts log, reminder of servicing information or the remaining range associated with the AdBlue® and the SCR system (miles or km) and tyre pressure status information display.  
Long press: reset the service indicator or trip distance recorder (depending on the context).

## Displays

Some lamps have a fixed location, others can change location.  
For certain functions that have indicator lamps for both operation and deactivation, there is only one dedicated location.

### Permanent information

In the standard display, the instrument panel shows:

- in fixed locations:
  - Rev counter (Petrol or Diesel).
  - Fuel level indicator.
  - Coolant temperature indicator.
  - Charge level and range indicator (Rechargeable hybrid).
  - Power indicator (Rechargeable hybrid).
  - Distance recorders.
- in variable locations:
  - Information related to the gearbox and gear shift indicator.
  - Digital speedometer.

- Status or alert messages displayed temporarily.

### Optional information

Depending on the selected display mode and active features, additional information may be displayed:

- Rev counter (Petrol or Diesel).
- Trip computer.
- Driving aid functions.
- Speed limiter or cruise control.
- Media currently playing.
- Navigation instructions.
- Analogue speedometer.
- Engine oil level and temperature.

## Customising the instrument panel

You can modify the appearance of the instrument panel by choosing:

- a display colour.
- a display mode.

### **i** Display language and units

These depend on the touch screen settings.

When travelling abroad, the speed must be shown in the official units of the country you are driving in (mph, miles or km/h, km).

- !** As a safety measure, these adjustments must be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

## Choosing the display colour



▶ Press **"Settings"** in the upper banner of the touch screen.

- ▶ Select **"Color schemes"**.
- ▶ Select a display colour.

## Choosing the display mode

In each mode, specific types of information are displayed on the instrument panel.



- ▶ Turn the thumbwheel on the left of the steering wheel to display and scroll through the various modes on the left-hand side of the instrument panel.
- ▶ Press the thumbwheel to confirm the mode. The new display mode is applied immediately. If you do not press the thumbwheel, the selected display mode is automatically applied after a few moments.

### Display modes

- **"Dials"**: standard display of analogue and digital speedometers, total distance recorder and:
  - fuel gauge, coolant temperature indicator and rev counter (Petrol or Diesel).
  - fuel gauge, battery charge level indicator and power indicator (Rechargeable hybrid).

- **"Navigation"**: specific display, showing current navigation information (map and instructions).
- **"Driving"**: specific display, showing information relating to active driving aid systems.
- **"Minimum"**: limited display with digital speedometer, total distance recorder and:
  - fuel gauge and coolant temperature indicator (Petrol or Diesel).
  - fuel gauge and battery charge level indicator (Rechargeable hybrid).
- **"Personal"**: minimal display, with the ability to select and display optional information in the personalisable areas on the left and right.

### Configuring a "Personal" display mode

#### With CITROËN Connect Radio



▶ Press **Settings** in the banner of the touch screen.



▶ Select **"Configuration"**.



▶ Select **"Instrument panel personalisation"**.

#### With CITROËN Connect Nav



▶ Press **Settings** in the banner of the touch screen.

▶ Select **"OPTIONS"**.



▶ Select **"Instrument panel personalisation"**.

- ▶ For each personalised display area (left and right), select a type of information using the corresponding scroll arrows on the touch screen:
- **"Driving aids"**.
  - **"Default"** (empty).

- **"G-metres"** (depending on version).
- **"Media"**.
- **"Navigation"**.
- **"Trip computer"**.
- **"Hybrid flows"** (depending on version).
- **"Rev counter"** (depending on version).

▶ Confirm to save and exit.

The information is displayed immediately on the instrument panel if the corresponding display mode is selected.

## Warning and indicator lamps

Displayed as symbols, the warning and indicator lamps inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamps) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamps). Certain lamps light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colours.

### Associated warnings

The illumination of a lamp may be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.

Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or whether a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each lamp for further information.

### When the ignition is switched on

Certain red or orange warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lamps should go off as soon as the engine is started.

For more information on a system or a function, refer to the corresponding section.

### Persistent warning lamp

If a red or orange warning lamp comes on, there may be a fault which needs further investigation.

#### If a lamp remains lit

The references (1), (2) and (3) in the warning and indicator lamp description indicate whether you should contact a qualified professional in addition to the immediate recommended actions.

#### (1): You must stop the vehicle.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## List of warning and indicator lamps

### Red warning/indicator lamps

#### STOP



Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

A serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering, automatic gearbox or a major electrical fault has been detected.

Carry out (1) and then (2).

#### Engine oil pressure



Fixed.  
There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.

Carry out (1) and then (2).

#### Maximum coolant temperature



Fixed.  
The temperature of the cooling system is too high.

Carry out (1), then wait until the engine has cooled down before topping up the level, if necessary. If the problem persists, carry out (2).

#### System malfunction (Rechargeable hybrid)



Fixed.  
The rechargeable hybrid system is faulty.  
Carry out (1) and then (2).

#### Cable connected (Rechargeable hybrid)



Fixed when the ignition is switched on.  
The charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector.



Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by a message.

It is not possible to start the vehicle while the charging cable is connected to the vehicle's connector.

Disconnect the charging cable and close the flap.

#### 12 V battery charge



Fixed.  
The battery charging circuit is faulty (e.g. dirty terminals, loose or severed alternator belt).

Carry out (1).

If the electric parking brake stops working, immobilise the vehicle:

- ▶ With the manual gearbox, engage a gear.
- ▶ With the automatic gearbox, fit the chocks against one of the wheels.

Clean and tighten the terminals. If the warning lamp does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (2).

#### Door(s) open



Fixed, associated with a message identifying the access.

An audible signal supplements the alert if the speed is higher than 6 mph (10 km/h).

A door or the boot is not properly closed.

### Seat belts not fastened/unfastened



Fixed or flashing, accompanied by an increasing audible signal.

A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.

### Electric parking brake



Fixed.

The electric parking brake is applied.



Flashing.

Application/release is faulty.

Carry out (1): park on flat ground (on a level surface).

With a manual gearbox, engage a gear.

With an automatic gearbox, select mode **P**.

Switch off the ignition and carry out (2).

### Braking



Fixed.

The brake fluid level in the braking circuit has dropped significantly.

Carry out (1), then top up with fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (2).



Fixed.

The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.

Carry out (1) and then (2).

### Orange warning/indicator lamps

#### Anti-lock braking system (ABS)



Fixed.

The anti-lock braking system has a fault. The vehicle retains conventional braking.

Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

#### Service



Temporarily on, accompanied by the display of a message.

One or more minor faults, for which there is/are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected. Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel.

You may be able to deal with some faults yourself, such as changing the battery in the remote control.

For other faults, such as with the tyre under-inflation detection system, carry out (3).



Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.

One or more major faults, for which there is/are no specific warning lamp(s), have been detected. Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed on the instrument panel, then carry out (3).



Service warning lamp fixed and service spanner flashing then fixed.

The servicing interval has been exceeded. The vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.

Only with BlueHDi Diesel engines.

### AdBlue® (BlueHDi)



On for around 30 seconds when starting the vehicle, accompanied by a message indicating the driving range.

The driving range is between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km).

Top up the AdBlue®.



Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.

The driving range is between 500 and 62 miles (800 and 100 km).

**Promptly** top up the AdBlue®, or carry out (3).



Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.

The driving range is less than 62 miles (100 km).

You **must** top up the AdBlue® to **avoid engine starting being prevented**, or carry out (3).





Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.

The AdBlue® tank is empty: the legally required engine immobiliser system prevents the engine from starting.

To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue® or carry out (2).



It is **essential** to add at least 10 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.

### SCR emissions control system (BlueHDI)

  Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.



A malfunction of the SCR emissions control system has been detected.

This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.

  Flashing AdBlue® warning lamp on switching on the ignition, with the Engine self-diagnostics warning lamp on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the driving range.

Depending on the message displayed, it is possible to drive for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the engine immobiliser is triggered.


Carry out (3) without delay, to **avoid starting being prevented**.

  Flashing AdBlue® warning lamp on switching on the ignition, with the Engine self-diagnostics warning lamp on fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.

The engine immobiliser prevents the engine from restarting (the permitted driving limit has been exceeded after confirmation of a malfunction of the emissions control system).


To start the engine, carry out (2).

### Engine self-diagnostics system

 Flashing.  
The engine management system has a fault.


There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed.

You must carry out (2).


 Fixed.  
The emissions control system has a fault. The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started.

Carry out (3) without delay.


### Collision Risk Alert/Active Safety Brake

 Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.

The system has been deactivated via the touch screen (**Driving/Vehicle** menu).



 Flashing.  
The system activates and brakes the vehicle momentarily to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle in front.

For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.


 Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.


The system has a fault.

Carry out (3).

  Fixed.  
The system is deactivated temporarily because the driver and/or front passenger (depending on version) has been detected as present but the corresponding seat belt has not been fastened.



### Active lane departure warning system

 Fixed.  
The system has been automatically deactivated or placed on standby.



 Flashing.  
You are about to cross a broken lane marking without operating the direction indicators.

The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory if it detects a risk of unintentionally crossing a line or hard shoulder (depending on version).

For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

  Fixed.  
The system has a fault.  
Carry out (3).


### Lane positioning assist

  Fixed, accompanied by the Service warning lamp.

The system has a fault.

Carry out (3).

### Dynamic stability control (DSC)/Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

 Fixed.  
The system is deactivated.

The DSC/ASR system is reactivated automatically when the vehicle is restarted, and at speeds above approximately 31 mph (50 km/h).

At speeds below 31 mph (50 km/h), it can be reactivated manually.





Flashing.

DSC/ASR system regulation is activated in the event of a loss of grip or trajectory.



Fixed.

The DSC/ASR system has a fault.

Carry out (3).

### Emergency brake malfunction (with electric parking brake)



Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".

Emergency braking does not deliver optimal performance.

If automatic release is not available, use manual release or carry out (3).

### Hill start assist



Fixed, accompanied by the message "Anti roll-back system fault".

The system has a fault.

Carry out (3).

### Under-inflation



Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

The pressure in one or more tyres is too low. Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible.

Reinitialise the detection system after adjusting the pressure.



Under-inflation warning lamp flashing then fixed and Service warning lamp fixed.

The tyre pressure monitoring system is faulty.

Under-inflation detection is no longer monitored. Check the tyre pressures as soon as possible and carry out (3).

### Engine preheating (Diesel)



Temporarily on

(up to approximately 30 seconds in severe weather conditions).

When switching on the ignition, if the weather conditions and the engine temperature make it necessary.

Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting.

When the warning lamp goes off, starting will occur immediately if you press and hold:

- the clutch pedal with a manual gearbox.
- the brake pedal with an automatic gearbox.

If the engine does not start, make the engine starting request again, while keeping your foot on the pedal.

### Front passenger airbag (ON)



Fixed.

The front passenger airbag is activated. The control is set to the "ON" position.

**In this case, do not install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat - risk of serious injury!**

### Front passenger airbag (OFF)



Fixed.

The front passenger airbag is deactivated. The control is set to the "OFF" position.

A "rearward facing" child seat can be installed, unless there is a fault with the airbags (Airbags warning lamp on).

### Airbags



Fixed.

One of the airbags or seat belt pretensioners is faulty.

Carry out (3).

### Pedestrian horn (Rechargeable hybrid)



Fixed.

Horn fault detected.

Carry out (3).

### Low fuel level



or



Fixed (warning lamp or LED) and needle in the red zone

(depending on version), accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

The audible signal and the message are repeated with increasing frequency as the level drops towards zero.

When it first comes on, there remains **approximately 5 litres of fuel** in the tank (reserve).

Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel.

**Never drive until completely empty**, as this could damage the emissions control and injection systems.

### Diesel fuel filter (Diesel)



Fixed.

The Diesel fuel filter contains water.

Carry out (2) without delay. Risk of damaging the fuel injection system!

**Particle filter (Diesel)**

Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message about the risk of particle filter blockage.

The particle filter is nearing saturation.

As soon as traffic conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h), with an engine speed of above 2,500 rpm, until the warning lamp goes off.



Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that the additive level in the particle filter is too low.

The low level in the additive tank has been reached.

Top up without delay: carry out (3).

**Automatic functions deactivated (electric parking brake)**

Fixed.

The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" (on acceleration) functions are deactivated. If automatic application/release is no longer possible:

- ▶ Start the engine.
- ▶ Use the control to apply the electric parking brake.
- ▶ Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
- ▶ Hold the control pressed in the release direction for between 10 and 15 seconds.
- ▶ Release the control.
- ▶ Depress and hold the brake pedal.
- ▶ Pull the control in the application direction for 2 seconds.

- ▶ Release the control and the brake pedal.

**Malfunction (with electric parking brake)**

Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".

The vehicle cannot be immobilised with the engine running.

If manual application and release commands are not working, the electric parking brake control lever is faulty.

The automatic functions must be used at all times and are automatically re-enabled in the event of a control lever fault.

Carry out (2).



Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".

The parking brake is faulty: manual and automatic functions may not be working.

When stationary, to immobilise the vehicle:

- ▶ Pull and hold the control lever for approximately 7 to 15 seconds, until the indicator lamp comes on on the instrument panel.
  - If this procedure does not work, secure the vehicle:
    - ▶ Park on a level surface.
    - ▶ With a manual gearbox, engage a gear.
    - ▶ With an automatic gearbox, select **P**, then place the supplied chocks against one of the wheels.
- Then carry out (2).

**Parking sensors**

Fixed, accompanied by an onscreen message and an audible signal.

The system is deactivated.



Fixed, associated with the Service warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

The system has a fault.

Carry out (3).

**Foot on the clutch**

Fixed.

Stop & Start: the change to START mode is rejected because the clutch pedal is not fully depressed.

Fully depress the clutch pedal.

**Power steering**

Fixed.

The power steering has a fault.

Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).

**Stop & Start**

Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message.

The Stop & Start system has been deactivated manually.

The engine will not switch off at the next traffic stop.

Press the button to reactivate the system.



Fixed.

The Stop & Start system has been deactivated automatically.

The engine will not switch off at the next traffic stop, if the exterior temperature is:

- below 0°C.
- above +35°C.

For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.



Flashing then fixed, accompanied by a message.

The system has a fault.  
Carry out (3).

### Rear foglamps



Fixed.  
The lamps are on.

### Green warning/indicator lamps

#### Stop & Start



Fixed.  
When the vehicle stops, the Stop & Start system puts the engine into STOP mode.



Flashing temporarily.  
STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.  
For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

### Vehicle ready to drive (Rechargeable hybrid)



Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal when it comes on.

The vehicle is ready to drive.

The indicator lamp goes out upon reaching a speed of approximately 3 mph (5 km/h) and lights up again when the vehicle stops moving.

The lamp will go out when you turn off the engine and exit the vehicle.

### Park Assist



Fixed.  
The function is active.

For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

### Lane positioning assist



Fixed.  
The function has been activated.

All conditions have been met: the system is operating.

For more information, refer to the **Driving** section.

### Hill Assist Descent Control



Fixed.  
The system has been activated, but the conditions for regulation are not met (gradient, speed too high, gear engaged).



Flashing.  
The function is regulating the speed of the vehicle.

The vehicle is being braked; the brake lamps come on during the descent.

### Direction indicators



Flashing with audible signal.  
The direction indicators are on.

### Sidelamps



Fixed.  
The lamps are on.

### Dipped beam headlamps



Fixed.  
The lamps are on.

### Automatic headlamp dipping



Fixed.  
The function has been activated via the touch screen (**Driving/Vehicle** menu).

The lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position.

For more information, refer to the **Lighting and visibility** section.

### Front foglamps



Fixed.  
The front foglamps are on.

### Automatic wiping



Fixed.  
Automatic windscreen wiping is activated.

### Blue warning/indicator lamps



Fixed.  
The lamps are on.

### eSave function (Rechargeable hybrid)



Fixed, accompanied by the reserved electric range.

The eSave function is activated.

## Black/white warning lamps

### Hill Assist Descent Control



Fixed.  
(grey)

The function has been activated, but is currently paused because the speed is too high.

Reduce the vehicle speed to below 19 mph (30 km/h).

## Indicators

### Service indicator

The servicing information is expressed in terms of distance (miles or kilometres) and time (months or days).

The alert is given at whichever of these two terms is reached first.

The servicing information is displayed in the instrument panel. Depending on the version of the vehicle:

- The distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the "-" sign.
- An alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

**i** The value indicated is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service. The alert may also be triggered close to a due date.

#### Service spanner



On temporarily when the ignition is switched on.

Between 620 and 1,860 miles (1,000 and 3,000 km) remain before the next service is due.



Fixed, when the ignition is switched on. The next service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km).

Have your vehicle serviced very soon.

#### Service spanner flashing



Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on.

(With BlueHDi Diesel engines, combined with the Service warning lamp.)

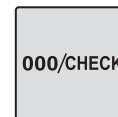
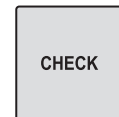
The servicing interval has been exceeded.

Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

#### Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.

- ▶ Switch the ignition off.

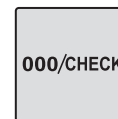
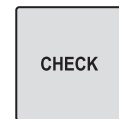


- ▶ Press and hold this button.
- ▶ Switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown.
- ▶ Release the button when =0 is displayed; the spanner disappears.

**i** If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.

#### Reminder of the servicing information

You can access the servicing information at any time via the instrument panel.



- ▶ Press this button to temporarily display the servicing information.

## Engine oil level indicator

(Depending on version)

On versions fitted with an electric gauge, the engine oil level status is displayed on the instrument panel for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, after the servicing information, in the form of messages.

**i** The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

### Low oil level

This is indicated by a message prompting you to top up the level, accompanied by the lighting of the Service warning lamp and an audible signal. If a low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

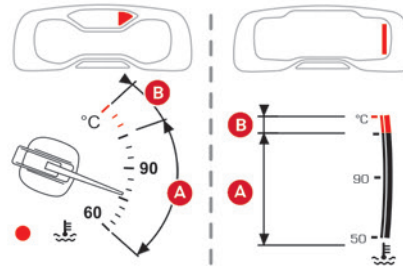
### Oil gauge malfunction

This is indicated by the message "**Oil level measurement invalid**" on the instrument panel. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** In the event of a malfunction of the electric gauge, the oil level is no longer monitored. If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located in the engine compartment.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Coolant temperature indicator



With the engine running:

- In zone **A**, the temperature is correct.
- In zone **B**, the temperature is too high.

The associated warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp light up in red on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

**You must stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.**

Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

**!** After switching off the ignition, carefully open the bonnet and check the coolant level.

**i** For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

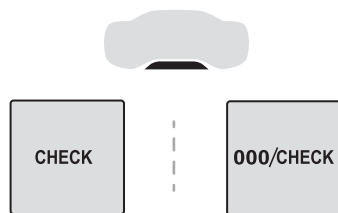
## AdBlue® range indicators (BlueHDi)

The Diesel BlueHDi engines are equipped with a system that associates the SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) emissions control system and the Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases. They cannot function without AdBlue® fluid.

**!** The engine starting prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty. It is then no longer possible to start the engine until the minimum level of AdBlue® has been topped up.

### Manual display of the range

While the driving range is greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km), it is not displayed automatically.







► Press this button to temporarily display the driving range.

### Actions required related to a lack of AdBlue®

The following warning lamps light up when the quantity of AdBlue® is lower than the reserve level corresponding to a range of 1,500 miles (2,400 km).

Together with the warning lamps, messages regularly remind you of the need to top up to avoid engine starting being prevented. Refer to the **Warning and indicator lamps** section for details of the messages displayed.

**i** For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, and in particular on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.



Warning/indicator lamps on	Action	Remaining range
	Top up.	Between 1,500 miles and 500 miles (2,400 km and 800 km)
	Top up as soon as possible.	Between 500 miles and 62 miles (800 km and 100 km)
	<b>A top-up is vital</b> , there is a risk that the engine will be prevented from starting.	Between 62 miles and 0 miles (100 km and 0 km)
	To be able to restart the engine, add at least 10 litres of AdBlue® to the tank.	0 miles (km)

**i** **Taking into account of top-up**  
Top-up detection may not be instantaneous after addition. It may take a few

minutes of driving before the top-up detection is effective.

### Malfunction of the SCR emissions control system

#### Malfunction detection

 	<p>If a malfunction is detected, these warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of an <b>"Emissions control fault"</b> message.</p>
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

The alert is triggered while driving when the fault is detected for the first time, and thereafter when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, for as long as the cause of the fault persists.

**i** If the fault is temporary, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnostic checks of the SCR emissions control system.

#### Malfunction confirmed during the permitted driving phase (between 685 miles and 0 miles (1,100 km and 0 km))

If the fault indication is still displayed permanently after 31 miles (50 km) of driving, the fault in the SCR system is confirmed. The AdBlue warning lamp flashes and a message is displayed (**"Emissions**

**control fault: starting prevented in X miles (kms)"**), indicating the driving range in miles or kilometres.

While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds. The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.

You can continue driving for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the **engine starting prevention** system is triggered.

**!** Have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

### Starting prevented

Every time the ignition is switched on, the message "**Emissions control fault: Starting prevented**" is displayed.

**!** **To restart the engine**  
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Power indicator (Rechargeable hybrid)

The power indicator shows in real time the power demanded from the vehicle.

There are 3 zones:



**POWER High power demand, using the combined capabilities of the petrol engine and the electric motor.**

The slider is located in this zone during more dynamic driving phases when high levels of performance are being demanded.

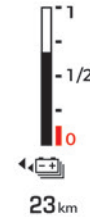
**ECO Optimal use of energy (internal combustion or electric).**

The slider is located in this zone when driving under electric power and when optimal use is being made of the petrol engine, both accessible by adopting a suitable driving style. A symbol indicates the threshold at which the petrol engine will restart. The driver can therefore moderate their acceleration to remain in electric driving mode.

**CHARGE Energy recovery for partly recharging the traction battery.**

The slider is located in this zone during deceleration: taking your foot off the accelerator pedal or braking.

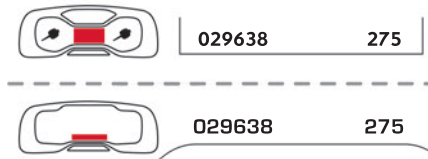
## Charge level indicator (Rechargeable hybrid)



The charge level of the traction battery and the remaining range in electric driving mode are permanently displayed when the vehicle is switched on.

**!** The range displayed depends on the use of the vehicle (type of driving and speed), the outside temperature and the activated comfort equipment.

## Distance recorders



The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off,

when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

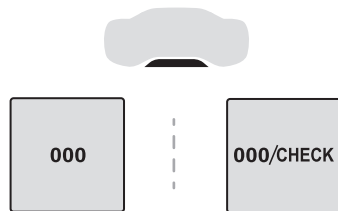
**i** When travelling abroad, you may need to change the units of distance and speed: The display of distance and speed must be expressed in the official unit of the country (km or miles). The change of units is done via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

### Total distance recorder

It measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.

### Trip distance recorder

This measures the distance travelled since it was last reset by the driver.

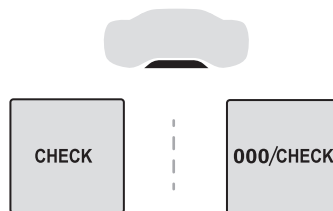


### Resetting the trip recorder

► With the ignition on, press the button until zeros appear.

## Manual test on the instrument panel

This function allows you, at any time, to check certain indicators and to display the alerts log.



► With the engine running, briefly press this button.

The following information is displayed on the instrument panel:

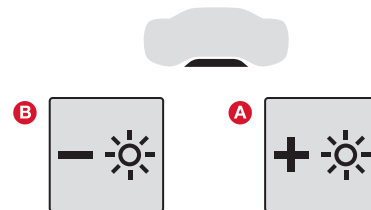
- Engine oil level.
- Next service due.
- Driving range associated with the AdBlue® and the SCR system (BlueHDi Diesel).
- Tyre pressure check.
- Current alerts.

**i** This information is also displayed automatically every time the ignition is switched on.

## Lighting dimmer

This system allows the brightness of the instruments and controls to be adjusted to suit the ambient light level.




### With buttons



With the lamps on, press button **A** to increase the brightness of the lighting, or button **B** to decrease it.

Release the button when the desired brightness is reached.

### With CITROËN Connect Radio


-  ► Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.
-  ► Select "**Brightness**".
-  ► Adjust the brightness by pressing the arrows or moving the slider.


The settings are applied immediately.

► Press outside the settings window to exit.

You can also switch off the screen:



 ▶ Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.


 ▶ Select "**Dark**".

The screen goes off completely.


▶ Press the screen again (anywhere on its surface) to turn it on.

## With CITROËN Connect Nav


**With the lamps switched on:**


 ▶ Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.

▶ Select "**OPTIONS**".


 ▶ Select "**Screen configuration**".


▶ Select the "**Brightness**" tab.

 ▶ Adjust the instrument panel and screen brightness by using the arrows or moving the slider.

 ▶ Press this button to save and exit.

You can also switch off the screen:

 ▶ Press this button to select the **Settings** menu.

 ▶ Select "**Turn off screen**".

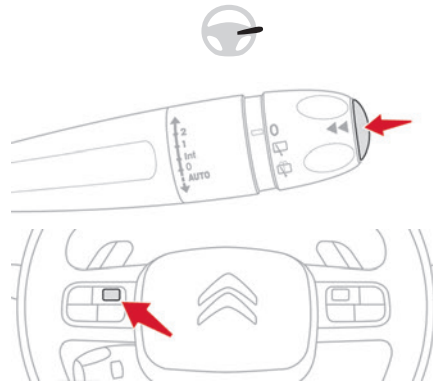
The screen goes off completely.

▶ Press the screen again (anywhere on its surface) to turn it on.

## Trip computer

Displays information related to the current trip (range, fuel consumption, average speed, etc.).

### Data displayed on the instrument panel



#### With instrument panels with dials

The display of trip computer data is selected by pressing the end of the wiper control stalk or by rotating the thumbwheel located on the left of the steering wheel.

#### With digital instrument panel

Trip computer data is displayed permanently when the "DRIVING" or "PERSONAL" display mode is selected, depending on version.


In all other display modes, pressing the end of the wiper control stalk will cause this data to appear temporarily in a specific window.

#### Display of the different tabs

▶ Pressing the button located on the end of the wiper control stalk displays the following tabs in turn:

- Current information:
  - Total range (Petrol or Diesel).
  - Current consumption (Petrol or Diesel).
  - Stop & Start time counter (Petrol or Diesel).
  - Percentage of the current journey travelled in all-electric driving mode (Rechargeable hybrid).
- Trips "1" then "2":
  - Average speed.
  - Average fuel consumption.
  - Distance travelled.

## Trip reset

 ▶ When the desired trip is displayed, press the button on the end of the wiper control stalk for more than 2 seconds.

Trips "1" and "2" are independent and are used in the same way.

## Definitions

### Range

(miles or km)



Distance that can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (based on the

average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

This value may vary following a change in driving style or terrain, leading to a significant change in current fuel consumption.

When the range falls below 19 miles (30 km), dashes are displayed.

After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 62 miles (100 km).

Dashes appearing permanently in place of numbers while driving indicates a malfunction. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Current consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)



Calculated during the last few seconds.

This function is only displayed at speeds above 19 mph (30 km/h).

### Average consumption

(mpg or l/100 km or km/l)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

### Average speed

(mph or km/h)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

### Distance travelled

(miles or km)



Calculated since the last trip computer reset.

### Stop & Start time counter



(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)

If your vehicle is fitted with the Stop & Start function, a time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.

The time counter is reset each time the ignition is switched on.

## Touch screen

This system gives access to the following elements:

- Permanent display of the time and outside temperature (a blue warning lamp appears if there is a risk of ice).
- Heating/air conditioning system controls.
- Vehicle functions and equipment setting menus.
- Audio system and telephone controls and display of related information.
- Display of visual manoeuvring aid functions (visual parking sensor information, Park Assist, etc.).
- Internet services and display of related information.
- Front seat massage mode and intensity settings (depending on version).

– Navigation system controls and display of related information (depending on version).

**!** For safety reasons, always stop the vehicle before performing operations that require sustained attention.

Some functions are not accessible while driving.

## Principles

► Use the buttons arranged below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons on the touch screen.

Some menus may display across two pages: press the "OPTIONS" button to access the second page.

**i** After a few moments with no action on the second page, the first page is displayed automatically.

To deactivate/activate a function, select "OFF" or "ON".



Settings for a function



Access to additional information on the function

**OK**

Confirm



Return to the previous page or confirm

## Menus



**i** Press the touch screen with three fingers to show all of the menu buttons.


**i** For more information about the menus, refer to the sections describing the audio and telematics systems.

 **Radio/Media**

 **Climate**  
Settings for temperature, air flow, etc.

For more information on **Manual air conditioning** and **Dual-zone automatic air conditioning**, refer to the corresponding sections.


 **Navigation** (Depending on equipment)


 **Driving or Vehicle** (Depending on equipment)


Activation, deactivation and settings for certain functions.

The functions are organised in 2 tabs: "**Driving functions**" and "**Vehicle settings**".

 **Telephone**

 **Applications**  
Display of available connected services and access to the **Eco-coaching** function.

 **Settings**  
Main settings for the audio system, touch screen and digital instrument panel.

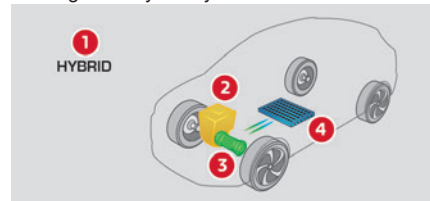
 **Energy** (Depending on equipment)  
Access to the rechargeable hybrid system features (energy flow, consumption statistics, deferred charging, eSave function).

## Energy menu

This menu is only available with CITROËN Connect Nav.

### Flow

The page shows the operation of the rechargeable hybrid system in real time.



1. Active driving mode

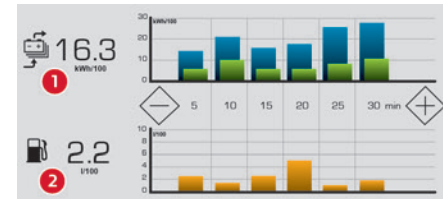
2. Petrol engine
3. Electric motor
4. Traction battery charge level

The energy flows have a colour for each type of driving:

- Blue: 100% electrical energy.
- Orange: energy from the petrol engine.
- Green: energy recovery.

## Statistics

This page shows electrical energy and fuel consumption statistics.



1. Average electrical consumption for the current trip (kWh/100 km) and historical values:

- Blue bar chart: directly consumed energy supplied by the traction battery.
- Green bar chart: energy recovered during deceleration and braking, used to recharge the battery.

2. Average fuel consumption for the current trip (kWh/100 km) and historical values (orange bar chart).

► You can change the displayed time scale by pressing the - or + buttons.

**i** A current trip is any trip of more than 20 minutes without switching off the ignition.

## Charging

This page allows you to programme deferred charging.

For more information on **Charging the traction battery (Rechargeable hybrid)**, refer to the corresponding section.

## eSave

The **eSave** function makes it possible to reserve all or part of the electrical energy in the traction battery for later use during a journey (e.g. driving in an urban area or in an area reserved for electric vehicles).

► Select the electric range to be reserved (**10 km, 20 km** or the full range **MAX**) then activate the function by pressing **ON**.



Activation of the function is confirmed by the lighting of this indicator lamp on the instrument panel and the indication of the energy reserve in miles or kms.

► To use the energy reserve, choose the **Electric** driving mode in the mode selector.

**!** If the requested range exceeds the available range (not recommended), the internal combustion engine starts to recharge the traction battery up to the requested threshold. This leads to excessive fuel consumption.

## Information banner(s)

Certain information is displayed permanently in the touch screen banner(s).

- Time and outside temperature (a blue warning lamp appears if there is a risk of ice).
- Reminder of the air conditioning information, and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Reminder of the information in the **Radio Media** and **Telephone** menus.
- Notifications.
- Access to the **Settings** for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel (date/time, languages, units, etc.).

## Remotely operable additional functions (Rechargeable hybrid)

(Depending on country of sale)



The following functions are available from the **MyCitroën App** application, which is accessible from a smartphone:

- Managing the traction battery charging (deferred charging).
- Managing the temperature pre-conditioning.
- Viewing the state of charge and range of the vehicle.

## Installation procedure

- Download the **MyCitroën App** application from the appropriate online store for your smartphone.
  - Create an account.
  - Enter the vehicle identification number (available on the vehicle registration certificate).
- For more information on **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

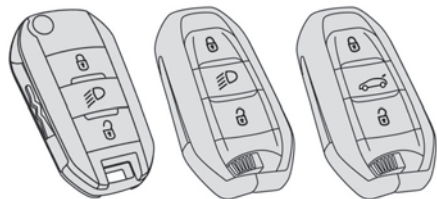
## **i** Network coverage

In order to be able to use the various remotely operable features, ensure that your vehicle is located in an area covered by the mobile network.

A lack of network coverage may prevent communication with the vehicle (for example, if it is in an underground car park). In such cases, the application will display a message indicating that the connection with the vehicle could not be established.

## Electronic key with remote control function and built-in key

### Remote control function



The remote control can be used to perform the following remote functions (depending on version):

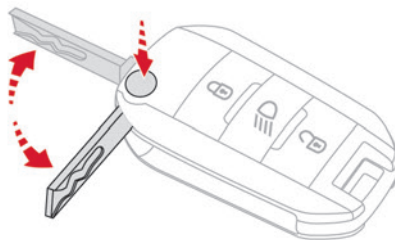
- Unlocking/Locking/Deadlocking the vehicle.
  - Unlocking - Opening the boot.
  - Remote operation of lighting.
  - Activating/Deactivating the alarm.
  - Locating the vehicle.
  - Closing the windows.
  - Closing the sunroof.
  - Activating the vehicle's electronic immobiliser.
- Back-up procedures allow the vehicle to be locked/unlocked in the event of a failure of the remote control, the central locking, the battery, etc. For more information on the **Back-up procedures**, refer to the corresponding section.

### Built-in key

Using the remote control built-in key, you can perform the following operations (depending on version):

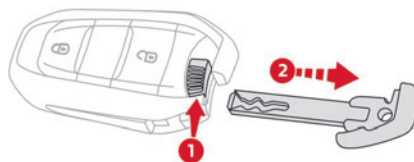
- Unlocking/Locking/Deadlocking the vehicle.
- Activation/Deactivation of the manual child lock.
- Activation/Deactivation of the front passenger airbag.
- Back-up Unlocking/Locking of the doors.
- Switching on the ignition and starting/switching off the engine.

#### Without Keyless Entry and Start



- ▶ To unfold or fold the key, press the button.

#### With Keyless Entry and Start



- ▶ To eject the key or put it back in place, pull and hold the button.

**!** Once the built-in key is ejected, always keep it with you to be able to carry out the corresponding back-up procedures.

## Unlocking the vehicle



Selective unlocking (driver's door, boot) is configured in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

### Complete unlocking

- ▶ Press the unlocking button.

### Selective unlocking

#### Driver's door

- ▶ Press the unlocking button.

The driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked (Petrol or Diesel).

The driver's door is unlocked (Rechargeable hybrid).

- ▶ Press it **again** to unlock the other doors and the boot.

The charging nozzle can be unplugged on the second press.

Complete or selective unlocking, and alarm deactivation (depending on version), is confirmed by the flashing of the direction indicators.

Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

## Selective unlocking and opening of the tailgate

By default, selective unlocking of the tailgate is deactivated and its motorised operation is activated.



▶ Press and hold this button to unlock the boot and, depending on version, trigger the motorised opening of the tailgate. When selective unlocking of the tailgate is activated, the doors and the fuel filler flap remain locked.

If selective unlocking of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing the button unlocks the whole vehicle.

**i** If motorised operation of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing the button partially opens the tailgate. To lock the vehicle, it is necessary to close the tailgate again.

## Locking the vehicle



### Normal locking

▶ Press the locking button. The locking, and the activation of the alarm depending on version, is confirmed by the lighting of the direction indicators. Depending on version, the door mirrors fold.

**i** An access (door or boot) that is not properly closed prevents locking of the vehicle. However, if the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be activated after 45 seconds. If the vehicle is unlocked but the doors or boot are not subsequently opened, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be reactivated automatically.

## Deadlocking



**!** Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also disables the central locking button. The horn remains operational.

**Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.**

- ▶ Press the locking button.
- ▶ Press the locking button again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle (confirmed by the temporary lighting of the direction indicators).

## Closing the windows and sunroof



Maintaining pressure on the locking button for more than 3 seconds allows the windows and, depending on version, the sunroof to be closed to the desired position. This operation also closes the sunroof blind.

**!** Ensure that no person or object could prevent the correct closing of the windows and sunroof. If, on versions with alarm, you want to leave the windows and/or sunroof partially open, you must first deactivate the interior volumetric alarm protection. For more information on the **Alarm**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must be locked.



▶ Press this button. The courtesy lamps will come on and the direction indicators will flash for a few seconds.

## Remote lighting of the lamps

Availability of this function depends on version.



▶ Press this button. The sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps, number plate lamps and door mirror spotlamps come on for 30 seconds. Pressing again before the end of the timed period switches off the lamps immediately.

## Advice

### ! Remote control

The remote control is a sensitive, high-frequency device; avoid handling it in your pocket, due to the risk of unintentionally unlocking the vehicle.

Avoid pressing the remote control buttons while out of range of the vehicle, due to the risk of rendering the remote control inoperative. It would then be necessary to reset it.

The remote control does not work when the key is in the ignition switch, even when the ignition is switched off.

### ! Anti-theft protection

Do not modify the electronic vehicle immobiliser, as this might result in malfunctions.

For vehicles with a key ignition switch, remember to remove the key and turn the steering wheel to engage the steering lock.

### ! Locking the vehicle

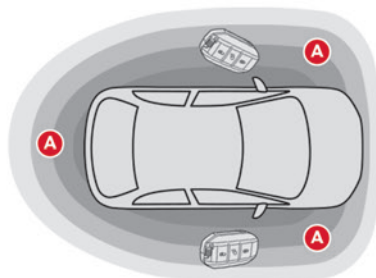
Driving with the doors locked could make it more difficult for the emergency services to enter the passenger compartment in an emergency.

As a safety precaution, remove the key from the ignition or take the electronic key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.

### i Purchasing a second-hand vehicle

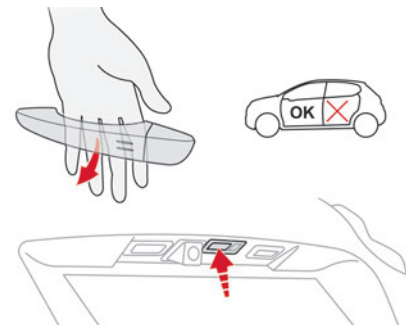
Have the key codes memorised by a CITROËN dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones able to start the vehicle.


## Keyless Entry and Start



This system allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle, while carrying the electronic key on your person in the recognition zone **A**.

## Unlocking the vehicle



 Selective unlocking (driver's door, boot) is configured in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

Selective unlocking is deactivated by default.

### Complete unlocking

► Pass your hand behind the handle of one of the front doors or press the tailgate opening control.

If the motorised tailgate opening control is activated, this action triggers its automatic opening.

### Opening the windows

Depending on version, keeping your hand behind the door handle or maintaining the press on the tailgate opening control allows the windows to be opened to the desired position.

## Selective unlocking

### Driver's door

- ▶ Pass your hand behind the driver's door handle.

The driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked (Petrol or Diesel).

The driver's door is unlocked (Rechargeable hybrid).

- ▶ To unlock the vehicle completely, pass your hand behind the handle of one of the passenger doors with the electronic key close to the passenger door, or press the tailgate opening control with the electronic key close to the rear of the vehicle.

Complete or selective unlocking, and deactivation of the alarm depending on version, is confirmed by the flashing of the direction indicators.

Depending on version, the door mirrors unfold.

### Selective unlocking of the tailgate

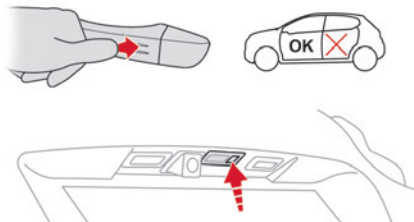
- ▶ Press the tailgate opening control to unlock just the boot.

The doors remain locked.

**i** If selective unlocking of the tailgate is deactivated, pressing this control also unlocks the doors.

## Locking the vehicle

### Normal locking



- ▶ Press the handle on one of the front doors (at the markings) or the locking control on the tailgate.

It is not possible to lock the vehicle if one of the electronic keys is left inside the vehicle.

### Closing the windows and sunroof

Maintaining pressure on the door handle or the tailgate control allows the windows and, depending on version, the sunroof to be closed to the desired position.

This operation also closes the sunroof blind.

- ▶ **!** Make sure that no item or person could prevent the correct closing of the windows and sunroof. Pay particular attention to children when operating windows.

The locking, and the activation of the alarm depending on version, is confirmed by the temporary lighting of the direction indicators.

Depending on version, the door mirrors fold.

- ▶ **!** Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt, etc.) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection. If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, etc.) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

## Deadlocking



- ▶ **!** Deadlocking renders the interior door controls inoperative. It also disables the central locking button.

The horn remains operational. Never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

- ▶ Press the handle on one of the front doors (at the markings) or the locking control on the tailgate to lock the vehicle.
- ▶ Press it again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle.



## Advice

**i** If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Start system has been left inside the vehicle, central locking will not take place. However, if the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be activated after 45 seconds.

**i** If the vehicle is unlocked but the doors or boot are not subsequently opened, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds. If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will be reactivated automatically.

**i** The automatic door mirror folding/unfolding function is configured via the touch screen's **Driving/Vehicle** menu.

**!** As a safety measure, never leave the vehicle, even for a short time, without taking the Keyless Entry and Start system's electronic key with you. Be aware of the risk of theft of the vehicle if the key is present in one of the defined areas while the vehicle is unlocked.

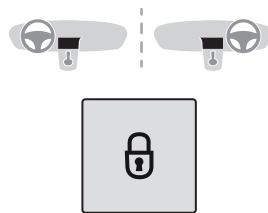
**!** To preserve the battery charge in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery, the "hands-free" functions are set to hibernation mode after 21 days without use. To restore these functions, press one of the

remote control buttons or start the engine with the electronic key against the back-up reader. For more information on starting with the Keyless Entry and Start system, refer to the corresponding section.

### **i** Electrical interference

The electronic key may not work if it is close to an electronic device (e.g. mobile telephone (switched on or on standby), laptop computer, strong magnetic fields). If this occurs, move the electronic key away from the electronic device.

## Central locking



## Manual

► Press this button to lock/unlock the vehicle (doors, boot and fuel filler flap) from inside the passenger compartment.

**!** Central locking does not take place if any of the doors are open.

### **i** When locking/deadlocking from the outside

When the vehicle is locked or deadlocked from the outside, the indicator lamp flashes and the button is deactivated.

- After normal locking, pull one of the interior door controls to unlock the vehicle.
- After deadlocking, you must use the remote control, the "Keyless Entry and Start" system or the built-in key to unlock the vehicle.

## Automatic (anti-intrusion security)

The doors and boot lock automatically while driving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)). To deactivate/reactivate this function (activated by default):

- Press the button until an audible signal is heard and a message appears on the screen.

### **i** Transporting long or voluminous objects

Pressing the central locking button unlocks the vehicle. Above 6 mph (10 km/h), this unlocking is temporary.

## Back-up procedures

### Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Go to a CITROËN dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.

The CITROËN dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code, enabling a new key to be ordered.

### Complete unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key

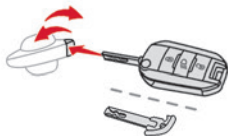
Use this procedure in the following situations:

- Remote control battery discharged.
- Remote control malfunction.
- Vehicle battery discharged.
- Vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

In the first case, change the remote control battery.

In the second case, reinitialise the remote control.

Refer to the corresponding sections.



- ▶ Insert the key in the door lock.
- ▶ Turn the key towards the front/rear to unlock/lock the vehicle.
- ▶ Turn the key towards the rear again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

**I** If the vehicle is fitted with an alarm, it will not be activated when locking with the key. If the alarm is activated, the siren sounds when the door is opened; switch on the ignition to stop it.

### Central locking not functioning

Use these procedures in the following cases:

- Central locking malfunction.
- Battery disconnected or discharged.

**!** In the event of a malfunction of the central locking system, the battery must be disconnected to ensure that the vehicle is locked fully.

### Front left-hand door

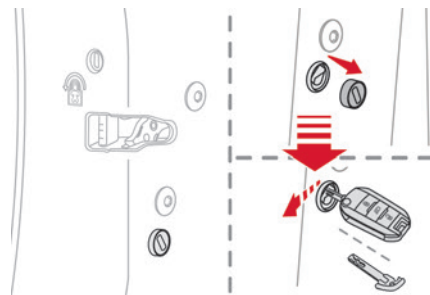
- ▶ Insert the key into the lock and turn it towards the rear of the vehicle to lock the door, or towards the front to unlock it.

## Passenger doors

### Unlocking

- ▶ Pull the interior door opening control.

### Locking



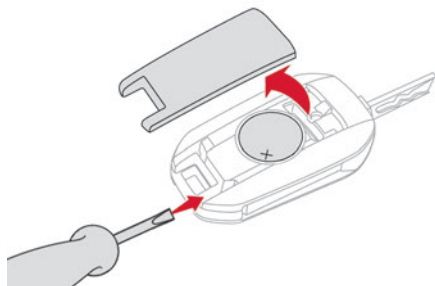
- ▶ Open the doors.
- ▶ For the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on. Refer to the corresponding section.
- ▶ **Remove the black cap**, located on the edge of the door, using the key.
- ▶ Insert the key into the socket without forcing it, then turn the latch towards the inside of the door.
- ▶ Remove the key and refit the black cap.
- ▶ Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

## Changing the battery

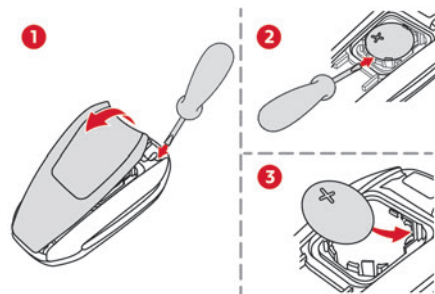
A message is displayed on the instrument panel when the battery needs changing.

**Battery type: CR2032/3 volts.**

### Without Keyless Entry and Start



### With Keyless Entry and Start



- ▶ Unclip the cover by inserting a small screwdriver in the slot and lift the cover.
- ▶ Remove the flat battery from its housing.
- ▶ Put the new battery in place, respecting the polarity. Start by inserting it into the contacts

located in the corner, then clip the cover onto the unit.

- ▶ Reinitialise the remote control. For more information on **Reinitialising the remote control**, refer to the corresponding section.



Do not throw remote control batteries away, as they contain metals that are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved disposal point.



This equipment contains a button type battery.

Do not swallow the battery. Risk of chemical burns!

Swallowing the battery can cause serious internal burning in only 2 hours and can be fatal.

If batteries have been swallowed or inserted into a part of the body, seek immediate medical advice.

Keep new and used batteries out of the reach of children.

If the battery compartment does not close properly, stop using the product and keep it out of the reach of children.



Risk of explosion if the battery is replaced with an incorrect type!

Replace the battery with the same type.

! Risk of explosion or leaking of inflammable liquid or gas!

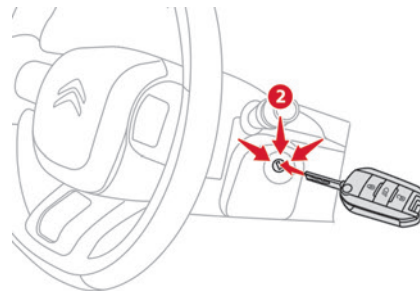
Do not use in/store in/place in an environment where the temperature is extremely high or where the pressure is extremely low due to very high altitude.

Do not try to burn, crush or cut a used battery.

## Reinitialising the remote control

Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.

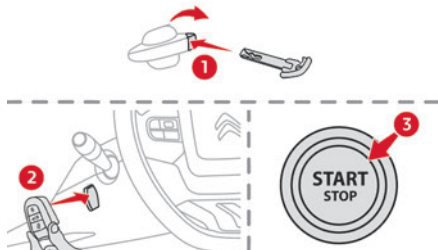
### Without Keyless Entry and Start



- ▶ Switch the ignition off.
- ▶ Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition on)**.
- ▶ Immediately press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.

- ▶ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the ignition switch. The remote control is now fully operational again.

### With Keyless Entry and Start



- ▶ Insert the mechanical key (incorporated into the remote control) into the lock to open the vehicle.
- ▶ Place the electronic key against the back-up reader on the steering column and hold it there until the ignition is switched on.
- ▶ **With a manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- ▶ **With an automatic gearbox**, while in mode P, depress the brake pedal.
- ▶ Switch on the ignition by pressing the "START/STOP" button.

If the fault persists after reinitialisation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.

## Doors

### Opening

#### From outside

- ▶ After unlocking the vehicle or with the "Keyless Entry and Start" system electronic key in the recognition zone, pull the door handle.

#### From inside

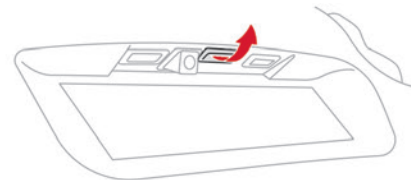
- ▶ Pull the interior opening control of a door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

- ▶ With selective unlocking activated:
  - Opening the driver's door unlocks the driver's door only (if the vehicle has not already been completely unlocked).
  - Opening one of the passenger doors unlocks the rest of the vehicle.

- ▶ The interior opening control on a rear door does not work if the child lock is on. For more information on the **Child Lock**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Boot

### Opening



- ▶ With the vehicle unlocked or with the Keyless Entry and Start electronic key in the recognition zone, press the left-hand button on the central tailgate control.
- ▶ Lift the tailgate.

- ▶ When selective unlocking is activated, the electronic key must be close to the rear of the vehicle.

For more information on the **Remote control** or on the **Keyless Entry and Start**, please refer to the corresponding section.

- ▶ If there is a fault or if it is difficult to move the tailgate when opening or closing it, have it checked as soon as possible by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to prevent the problem becoming worse, and potentially causing the tailgate to drop and thereby inflicting serious injuries.

**!** The tailgate is not designed to support a bicycle carrier.

## Closing

► Lower the tailgate using the interior grab handle.

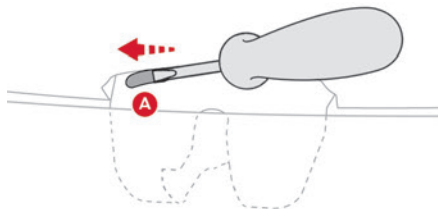
**!** In the event of a malfunction or if you experience difficulty opening or closing the tailgate, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop without delay, to avoid the issue deteriorating and prevent any risk of the tailgate dropping, potentially causing serious injury.

## Back-up release

To manually unlock the boot in the event of a battery or central locking failure.

## Unlocking

► Fold the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.



- Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the boot.
- Move the latch to the left.

## Locking after closing

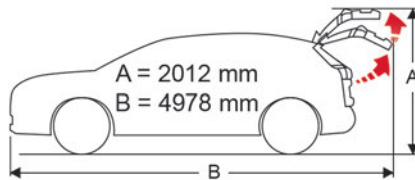
If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

**i** In the event of a fault with the central locking system, it is essential to disconnect the battery to lock the boot and so ensure complete locking of the vehicle.

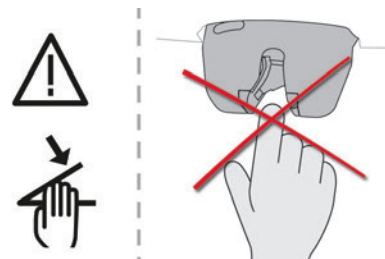
## Hands-free tailgate

(Depending on version)

The motorised tailgate must only be operated with the vehicle stationary.



**!** Check that there is enough space to allow for the movement of the motorised tailgate.



**!** Never insert a finger in the locking system of the motorised tailgate - risk of serious injury!

## Anti-pinch

The motorised tailgate has an obstacle detection system that automatically interrupts and reverses its movement by a few degrees, to allow the obstacle to be cleared.

Please note that this anti-pinch system is not active at the end of the closing travel (around 1 cm from completely closed).

**!** To avoid the risk of injury through pinching or trapping, before and during operation of the motorised tailgate:

- ensure that there is no-one close to the rear of the vehicle.
- monitor the activity of the rear passengers, particularly any children.


## Bicycle carrier/Towing device

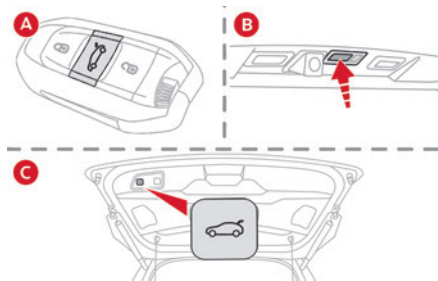
The motorised tailgate is not designed to support a bicycle carrier.

When installing a bicycle carrier on the towing device with connection of the cable to the trailer socket, the motorised operation of the tailgate will be automatically deactivated.

**!** If using a towing device or bicycle carrier not recommended by CITROËN, it is essential to deactivate the motorised operation of the tailgate.

## Motorised operation

 Motorised operation of the tailgate is set via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.



There are several ways of operating the tailgate:

- A. Using the Keyless Entry and Start system's electronic key
- B. Using the exterior tailgate control

- C. Using the interior tailgate control

### Opening

- ▶ A long press on the central button **A** of the electronic key.
- or
- ▶ A short press on the exterior tailgate control **B**, with the electronic key on your person.

**i** The tailgate opens, either completely by default, or to the position memorised beforehand.

If motorised operation is not activated, these actions release the tailgate (partially-open position).

When the vehicle is locked, the request to open the boot with one of the controls **A** or **B** unlocks the vehicle, or only the boot if selective unlocking is activated, prior to the opening of the boot.

### Closing

- ▶ A short press on the interior tailgate control **C**.

**i** It is possible to interrupt the operation of the tailgate at any point. Pressing one of these controls again interrupts the movement that is underway.

## Hands-free function (Hands-Free Tailgate Access)

With the electronic key on your person, this function allows the motorised tailgate to be opened, closed or stopped via a "kicking" movement under the rear bumper.



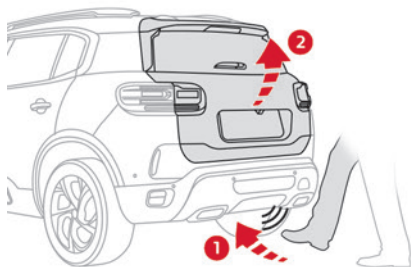
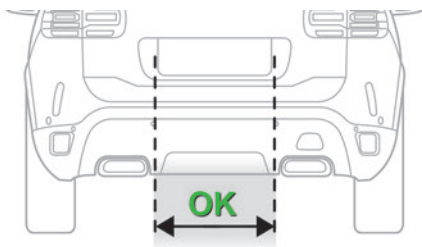
The "Hands-Free Tailgate/Access" function is set via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

**!** Ensure that you are steady on your feet before performing the "kicking" movement.

Take care not to touch the exhaust system which may be hot - risk of burns!

### **i** Rechargeable hybrid vehicles

The function is not available when the vehicle is connected.



► Position yourself behind the vehicle by the number plate and perform a "kicking" movement in the "OK" detection zone.

The "kicking" movement must be given forwards, smoothly, not too fast and with a vertical movement from low to high. Raise the foot sufficiently and remove it immediately. Recognition of the "kicking" movement is confirmed by the lighting of the direction indicators followed by an audible signal.

! "Sideward kicking" movements do not work. If the "kicking" movement has not

been detected, wait at least 2 seconds before repeating the movement.  
Do not perform repetitive "kicking" movements.

If the motorised tailgate has not started to open, check that:

- the function is activated.
- the electronic key is on your person, outside the vehicle in the rear recognition area.
- the "kicking" movement was performed in the detection zone, close enough to the bumper.
- the foot was removed from the bumper quickly enough.

#### Automatic locking with the hands-free function



The automatic locking of the vehicle with the hands-free function can be activated/deactivated via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

i When the vehicle is locked, the request to open the tailgate with this function unlocks the vehicle, or only the tailgate if selective unlocking is activated, prior to the opening of the tailgate.

Closing the tailgate with the "Hands-Free Tailgate Access" function enables you to lock the vehicle.

#### Recommendations on the hands-free function (Hands-Free Tailgate Access)

If it does not work, check that the electronic key is not exposed to a source of electromagnetic interference (e.g. smartphone).

The function may be deactivated or affected if there is rain or snow.

The function may not work correctly with a prosthetic leg.

In some circumstances, the tailgate may open or close by itself, particularly when:

- hitching up or removing a trailer;
- operating a towing device;
- fitting or removing a bicycle carrier;
- loading or unloading bicycles on/from a bicycle carrier;
- depositing or lifting something behind the vehicle;
- an animal approaches the rear bumper;
- washing the vehicle;
- maintenance is performed on the vehicle;
- accessing the spare wheel.

To avoid such operating problems, keep the electronic key away from the recognition zone or deactivate the hands-free function.

#### ! Towing device

The installation of a towing device may disturb the detection system.

► Perform the "kicking" movement on the right side of the towing device.

## Memorising an opening position

To **memorise** a position, in order to limit the motorised tailgate opening angle:

- ▶ move the tailgate to the desired position manually or by pressing the button.
- ▶ press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds (memorisation is confirmed by a brief audible signal).

**i** Memorising is not available until the height of opening is more than or equal to 1 metre between the low position and the high position of the tailgate.

To **delete** the memorised position:

- ▶ open the tailgate to any position.
- ▶ press button **C** or the exterior control **B** for more than 3 seconds (deletion is confirmed by a long audible signal).

## Manual operation

The tailgate can be manoeuvred by hand, even with motorised operation activated.

The tailgate must be stationary.

### With resumption of the motorised function

The motorised tailgate function can be activated manually.

- ▶ With the boot open: vigorously move the tailgate a little in the closing direction to activate motorised closing.

- ▶ With the boot partly open: vigorously move the tailgate a little in the opening direction to activate motorised opening.

### Without resumption of the motorised function

- ▶ Move the tailgate as slowly and smoothly as possible.

Assistance from the gas struts is no longer available when opening and closing the motorised tailgate manually. Resistance to opening and closing is therefore quite normal.

### **i** In case of the motor overheating

Repeatedly opening and closing the tailgate can cause overheating of its electric motor, after which opening and closing will not be possible.

Allow the electric motor to cool down for at least 10 minutes before carrying out any manoeuvre.

If you are unable to wait, operate it manually.

## Manual closing of the motorised tailgate in case of failure

This operation is **only necessary in the case of failure of the tailgate motor**.

If the failure originates from the battery, it is recommended to recharge it or change it with the tailgate **closed**.

In this situation, a significant force may be needed to close the tailgate.

- ▶ Close it gently without slamming, as slowly as possible, by pushing at the centre of the tailgate.

**!** Do not lower the tailgate by pushing at one of its sides - risk of damage!

## Precautions in use

### **i** In wintry conditions

To avoid any operating problems, remove the snow or wait until the ice melts before requesting motorised opening of the tailgate.

### **i** When washing

When washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash, do not forget to lock and move away from the vehicle to prevent any risk of unwanted opening.

## Alarm

(Depending on version)





System which protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins.

### Exterior perimeter monitoring

The system checks for opening of the vehicle. The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot or the bonnet, for example.

### Interior volumetric monitoring

The system checks for any variation in volume in the passenger compartment.

The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

### Anti-tilt monitoring

The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle.

The alarm goes off if the vehicle is lifted or moved.

**i** When the vehicle is parked, the alarm will not be triggered if the vehicle is knocked.

### Self-protection function

The system checks whether any of its components are out of service.

The alarm is triggered if the battery, the central control or the siren wiring is put out of service or damaged.

**!** **Work on the alarm system**  
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

### Activation

- ▶ Switch off the ignition and exit the vehicle.
- ▶ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the remote control or with the Keyless Entry and Start system.

When the monitoring system is active, the red indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.

The exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds and the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring after 45 seconds.

**!** **Door, boot or bonnet**  
If an opening is not properly closed, the vehicle is not locked, but the exterior perimeter monitoring will be activated after

45 seconds, at the same time as the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring.

**!** **Sunroof**  
If the sunroof is remained open, the vehicle will be locked with exterior perimeter monitoring activated but without interior volumetric or anti-tilt monitoring.

### Deactivation

- ▶ Press one of the remote control unlocking buttons:



short press

long press

or

- ▶ Unlock the vehicle with the Keyless Entry and Start system.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

**i** If the vehicle automatically locks itself again (as happens if a door or the boot is not opened within 30 seconds of unlocking), the monitoring system is automatically reactivated.

## Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring to avoid the unwanted triggering of the alarm, in certain cases such as:

- Slightly open window.
- Washing the vehicle.
- Changing a wheel.
- Towing the vehicle.
- Transport on a ship or ferry.

## Deactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

- ▶ Switch off the ignition and within 10 seconds press the alarm button until its red indicator lamp is on fixed.
- ▶ Get out of the vehicle.
- ▶ Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Start system. Only the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated; the button's red indicator lamp flashes once every second.

**i** To take effect, this deactivation must be carried out after each time the ignition is switched off.

## Reactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring

- ▶ Deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Start system. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.
- ▶ Reactivate all monitoring by locking the vehicle using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Start system. The red indicator lamp in the button once again flashes every second.

## Triggering of the alarm

This is indicated by sounding of the siren and flashing of the direction indicators for 30 seconds.

Depending on the country of sale, certain monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times consecutively. When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the Keyless Entry and Start system, rapid flashing of the red indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence. When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops.

## Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

- ▶ Unlock the vehicle using the key in the front left-hand door lock.
- ▶ Open the door; the alarm is triggered.

- ▶ Switch on the ignition; this stops the alarm. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

## Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

- ▶ Lock the vehicle using the key (built-in the remote control) in the front left-hand door lock.

## Automatic activation

(Depending on version)

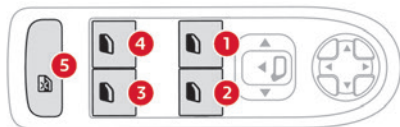
The system is activated automatically 2 minutes after the last door or the boot is closed.

- ▶ To avoid triggering the alarm on entering the vehicle, first press the unlocking button on the remote control or unlock the vehicle using the "Keyless Entry and Start" system.

## Malfunction

When the ignition is switched on, the fixed lighting of the red indicator lamp in the button indicates a system malfunction. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Electric windows



1. Left-hand front
2. Right-hand front
3. Right-hand rear
4. Left-hand rear
5. Deactivation of electric window controls located by rear seats

### Manual operation

► To open/close the window, press/pull the switch without passing the point of resistance; the window stops as soon as the switch is released.

### Automatic operation

► To open/close the window, press/pull the switch past its resistance point: the window opens/closes completely when the switch is released.

Operating the switch again stops the movement of the window.

**i** Window controls remain operational for approximately 45 seconds after switching off the ignition or after locking the vehicle. After that time, the controls are disabled. To reactivate them, switch on the ignition or unlock the vehicle.

### Anti-pinch

If the window meets an obstacle while rising, it stops and immediately partially lowers again.

### Deactivating the rear controls for the rear electric windows

**✘** For your children's safety, press control 5 to deactivate the controls for the rear electric windows, irrespective of their positions. The red indicator lamp in the button comes on and a confirmation message is displayed. The lamp will remain lit until the controls are reactivated.

The rear electric windows can still be controlled using the driver's controls.

### Reinitialising the electric windows

After reconnecting the battery, or in the event of abnormal window movement, the anti-pinch function must be reinitialised.

**The anti-pinch function is disabled during the following sequence of operations.**

For each window:

- Lower the window fully, then raise it; it will rise in steps of a few centimetres each time the control is pressed. Repeat the operation until the window is fully closed.
- Continue to pull the control for at least one second after the window reaches the closed position.

**!** If an electric window meets an obstacle during operation, the movement of the window must be reversed. To do this, press the relevant control.

When the driver operates the passengers' electric window controls, it is important to ensure that nothing can prevent the window from closing properly.

It is important to ensure that passengers use the electric windows correctly.

Pay particular attention to children when operating the windows.

Be aware of passengers and/or other persons present when closing windows remotely using the electronic key.

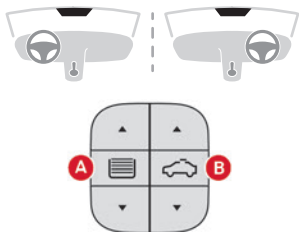
Do not put your head or arms through the open windows when the vehicle is moving - risk of serious injury!

### Panoramic sunroof

The panoramic sunroof consists of a movable glass panel that slides over the roof and a blind

that can be opened independently. Opening the sunroof automatically opens the blind.

► To operate the panoramic sunroof or the blind, use the buttons in the roof console.



**A.** Sunroof blind control

**B.** Sunroof control

The sunroof or blind can be operated when the ignition is turned on (if the battery is charged enough), with the engine running, in STOP mode of Stop & Start, and up to 45 seconds after turning off the ignition or after locking the vehicle.

### Precautions

! Do not put your head or arms through the sunroof while the vehicle is moving - risk of serious injury!

! Ensure that any luggage or accessories carried on the roof bars do not interfere with the movement of the sunroof. Do not place heavy loads on the movable glass panel of the sunroof.

! If the sunroof is wet, following a rain shower or washing the vehicle, wait until it is completely dry before operating it. Do not operate the sunroof if it is covered by snow or ice - risk of damage! Use only plastic scrapers to remove snow or ice from the sunroof.

! Regularly check the condition of the sunroof seals (e.g. presence of dust, dead leaves). If using a car wash, check first that the roof is correctly closed and keep the high-pressure jet at least 30 centimetres from the seals.

! Never leave the vehicle with the sunroof open.

## Operation

When opening the sunroof fully, the movable glass moves to a partially open position, then slides over the roof. Any intermediate position is possible.

i Depending on the speed of the vehicle, the partially open position may vary to improve the acoustics.

! Before operating the sunroof or blind control buttons, ensure that no object or person might prevent the movement. Be particularly aware of children when operating the sunroof or blind. If something is trapped when operating the sunroof or blind, you should reverse the movement of the sunroof or blind by pressing the control in question. The driver must ensure that passengers use the sunroof and blind correctly.

### Anti-pinch system

If the sunroof or blind encounters an obstacle when closing, the movement is automatically reversed.

The roof anti-pinch system is designed to be effective at speeds of up to 75 mph (120 km/h).

### Opening/Closing

► To open the sunroof or the blind, use the part of the button located towards the rear of the vehicle.  
 ► To close the sunroof or the blind, use the part of the button located towards the front of the vehicle.

### Operation of buttons

► Pressing a button beyond its point of resistance directly opens or closes the sunroof or blind fully.  
 ► Pressing the button again stops the current movement.

- ▶ When holding a button (without going beyond the point of resistance), the movement of the sunroof or blind stops when this button is released.
- ▶ When the sunroof is closed: pressing once without passing the point of resistance moves it to a partially open position.
- ▶ When the sunroof is partially open: pressing once without passing the point of resistance opens or closes it fully.

**i** The sunroof and windows, then the blind, can be closed by holding down the door locking control. The manoeuvre stops as soon as the locking control is released.

**i** Closing of the blind is limited by the position of the sunroof: the blind cannot go further than the front of the movable glass. During simultaneous movements of the sunroof and blind, the blind automatically stops or resumes movement depending on the position of the sunroof.

- ▶ Press and hold the front part of button **B**, until the sunroof and blind move slightly, then hold for a further 1 second before releasing.
- ▶ Wait 2 seconds and then press and hold the front part of button **B**. The blind and the sunroof will open and close, one after the other. When both are completely closed again, hold for a further 2 seconds and release.

**i** If there is an operating fault, restart the whole procedure.

## Reinitialisation

Following reconnection of the battery or in the event of a fault or jerky movement of the sunroof or blind, reinitialisation is required.

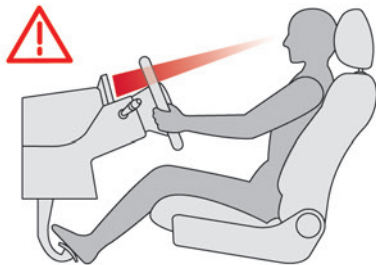
- ▶ Check that nothing is interfering with the sunroof or blind and that the seals are clean.
- ▶ With the ignition on, fully close the sunroof and blind.

## Correct driving position

**!** For safety reasons, adjustments must only be made when the vehicle is stationary.

Before taking to the road and to make the most of the ergonomic layout of the instruments and controls, carry out these adjustments in the following order:

- head restraint height.
- seat backrest angle.
- seat cushion height.
- longitudinal seat position.
- steering wheel height and reach.
- rear view mirror and door mirrors.



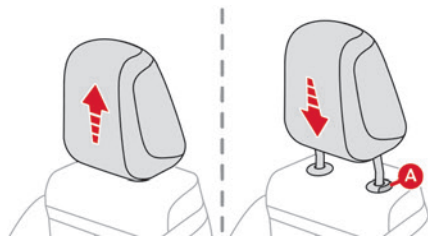
**!** Once these adjustments have been made, check that the instrument panel can be viewed correctly from your driving position.

## Front head restraints

### Adjusting the height

**i** The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.

#### 'Two-way' adjustment model



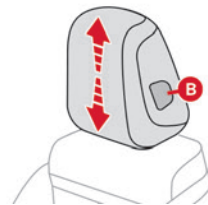
#### Upwards:

▶ pull the head restraint up to the desired position; the head restraint can be felt to click into position.

#### Downwards:

▶ press lug **A** and push the head restraint down to the desired position.

#### 'Four-way' adjustment model



#### Upwards:

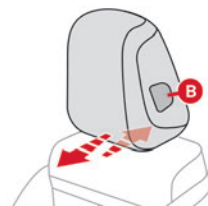
▶ pull the head restraint up to the desired position; the head restraint can be felt to click into position.

#### Downwards:

▶ press and hold button **B** and push the head restraint down to the desired position.

### Adjusting the angle

#### "Four-way" adjustment model



▶ press and hold button **B** and push the lower part of the head restraint forwards or backwards.

## Removing a head restraint

- ▶ Pull the head restraint fully up.
- ▶ Press the lug(s) **A** (depending on version) to release the head restraint and raise it fully.
- ▶ Stow the head restraint securely.

## Refitting a head restraint

- ▶ Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding seat backrest.
- ▶ Push the head restraint fully down.
- ▶ Press the lug(s) **A** (depending on version) to release the head restraint and push it down.
- ▶ Adjust the height of the head restraint.

**!** Never drive with the head restraints removed; they should be in place and adjusted for the occupant of the seat.

## Front seats

**!** Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is no person or object that might prevent the full travel of the seat. There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or of jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

## Manually-adjusted seats

### Longitudinal



- ▶ Raise the control bar and slide the seat forwards or backwards.
- ▶ Release the control bar to lock the seat in position on one of the notches.

### Backrest angle



- ▶ Turn the knob to obtain the desired angle.

## Lumbar

(driver only)



- ▶ Turn the knob to obtain the desired level of lumbar support.

## Height



- ▶ Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, until you obtain the position required.

## Electrically-adjustable seats

**i** To avoid draining the battery, carry out these adjustments with the engine running.

## Longitudinal



- ▶ Push the control forwards or backwards to slide the seat.

## Backrest angle



- ▶ Tilt the control forwards or rearwards.

## Lumbar



The control allows independent adjustment of the depth and vertical position of the lumbar support.



- ▶ Press and hold the front or rear of the control to increase or reduce the lumbar support.
- ▶ Press and hold the top or bottom of the control to raise or lower the lumbar support area.

## Cushion height and angle



- ▶ Tilt the rear of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.
- ▶ Tilt the front of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required angle.

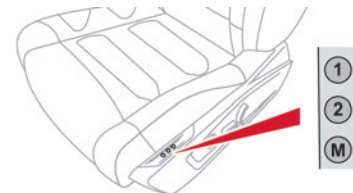
## Comfort functions

### Memorising driving positions



Associated with the electrically-adjusted driver's seat, this function allows two driving positions to be memorised, to make these adjustments easier if there are frequent driver changes.

It records the electric adjustments made to the seat and door mirrors.



### Using buttons 1/2/M

- ▶ Enter the vehicle and switch the ignition on.
- ▶ Adjust your seat and the door mirrors.
- ▶ Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within 4 seconds.

An audible signal confirms the memorisation. Memorising a new position cancels the previous position.

### Recalling a stored position

**!** While the seat is moving, take care that no person or object hinders the automatic movement of the seat.

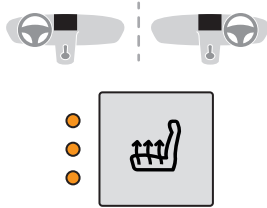
### With the ignition on or engine running

- ▶ Press button **1** or **2** to recall the corresponding position.
- An audible signal sounds when adjustment is complete.
- You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M**, **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat adjustment controls.



A stored position cannot be recalled while driving.  
The recalling of stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

## Heated seats



The function is active only with the engine running and when the outside temperature is below 20°C.

- ▶ Press the button corresponding to the seat.
  - ▶ Each press changes the heating level; the corresponding number of indicator lamps come on.
  - ▶ To switch off the heating, press the button until all of the indicator lamps are off.
- The system status is memorised when the ignition is switched off.



Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.

Reduce the heating intensity as soon as possible.

When the seat and passenger compartment have reached a satisfactory temperature, switch the function off; reducing electrical

consumption in turn decreases energy consumption.

**!** Prolonged use of heated seats is not recommended for people with sensitive skin.

There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (e.g. illness, taking medication).

To keep the heated pad intact and to prevent a short circuit:

- Do not place heavy or sharp objects on the seat.
- Do not kneel or stand on the seat.
- Do not spill liquids onto the seat.
- Never use the heating function if the seat is damp.

## Multipoint massage

System with a choice of type of massage and adjustment of its intensity.

This system operates with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode of the Stop & Start.

The massage settings are adjusted via the touch screen.

The function is activated using the button on the front seat.



- ▶ Press this button; its indicator lamp comes on.

The function is activated immediately using the last settings memorised and the settings page is displayed on the touch screen.

If the settings suit you and you make no changes, the display returns to its original state.

To modify the settings:

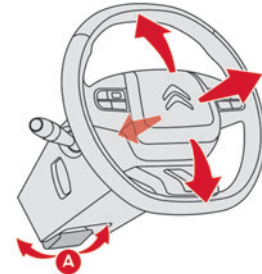
- ▶ Select another type of massage from the five available.
- ▶ Select a massage intensity from the three preset levels: "1" (Low), "2" (Normal) or "3" (High).

The changes are applied immediately.

Once activated, the system starts a one-hour massage cycle, made up of sequences of 6 minutes of massage followed by 4 minutes of rest.

The system automatically stops at the end of the cycle; the button's indicator lamp goes off.

## Steering wheel adjustment



- ▶ When stationary, pull control **A** to release the steering wheel.

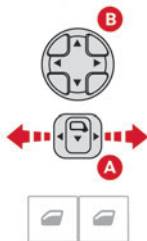
- ▶ Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- ▶ Push the control to lock the steering wheel.

**!** For safety reasons, these adjustments must only be carried out with the vehicle stationary.

## Mirrors

### Door mirrors

#### Adjustment



- ▶ Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- ▶ Move control **B** in any of the four directions to adjust.
- ▶ Return control **A** to its central position.

**!** As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the "blind spots". The objects that you see in the mirrors are in fact closer than they appear. Take this into account in order to correctly judge the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

#### Manual folding



The mirrors can be folded manually (parking obstruction, narrow garage, etc.).

- ▶ Turn the mirror towards the vehicle.

#### Electric folding

Depending on equipment, the mirrors can be folded electrically, when the vehicle is parked.



- ▶ From the inside, with the ignition on, place control **A** in the central position.
- ▶ Pull control **A** backwards.
- ▶ Lock the vehicle from the outside.

#### Electric unfolding

- ▶ From outside: unlock the vehicle.
- ▶ From inside: with the ignition on, place control **A** in the central position and then pull it rearwards.

**i** The remote-controlled automatic door mirror folding/unfolding function is

configured via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

#### Automatic tilting in reverse gear



Depending on version, this function allows to automatically tilt the mirrors downwards to assist with parking manoeuvres in reverse gear.

With the engine running, on engaging reverse gear, the mirror glasses tilt downwards.

They return to their initial position:

- A few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.
- Once the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).
- When the engine is switched off.



This function is set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

#### Demisting/Defrosting



If the vehicle is so equipped, demisting/defrosting of the heated door mirrors is performed when the heated rear screen is switched on.

For more information on **Rear screen demisting/defrosting**, refer to the corresponding section.

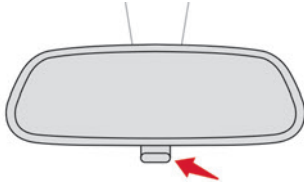
#### Interior rear view mirror

Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the

nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, headlamps of other vehicles, etc.

### Manual model

#### Day/night position

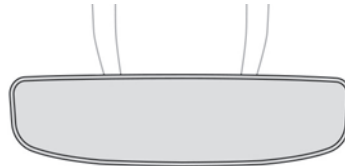
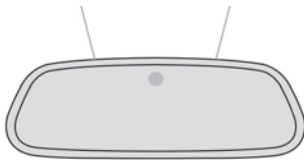


- ▶ Pull the lever to change to the anti-dazzle "night" position.
- ▶ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

#### Adjustment

- ▶ Adjust the mirror to the normal "day" position.

### Automatic "electrochromic" models



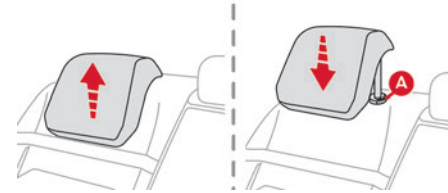
The electrochromic system uses a sensor to detect the level of exterior brightness, as well as that coming from the rear of the vehicle, in order to automatically and gradually switch between day and night usage.

**i** To ensure optimum visibility while manoeuvring, the mirror automatically brightens when reverse gear is engaged. The system is deactivated if the load in the boot exceeds the height of the load space cover or if the load space cover has items placed on it.

## Rear seats

The 3 seats of the 2<sup>nd</sup> row are independent and of the same width. Their backrests are adjustable to adapt the boot load space.

## Rear head restraints



They have two positions:

- A **high position**, for when the seat is in use:
  - ▶ Pull the head restraint fully up.
- A **low position**, for stowing, when the seat is not in use:
  - ▶ Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.

The rear head restraints can be removed.

### Removing a head restraint

- ▶ Release the backrest.
- ▶ Tilt the backrest slightly forwards.
- ▶ Pull the head restraint fully up.
- ▶ Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely.

### Refitting a head restraint

- ▶ Insert the head restraint rods into the guides in the corresponding backrest.
- ▶ Push the head restraint fully down.
- ▶ Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and push it down.

**!** Never drive with passengers seated at the rear when the head restraints are

removed; the head restraints should be in place and in the high position.

## Longitudinal adjustment

**!** Seat operations must only be done with the vehicle stationary.

Each seat can be adjusted individually.

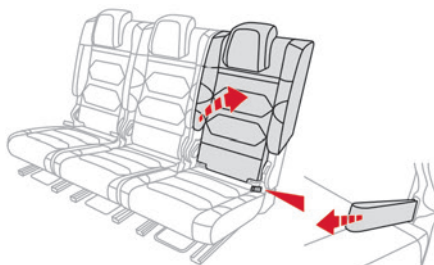


► Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

**i** Once the backrest is folded, it is no longer possible to slide the seat.

## Backrest angle

Several adjustment positions are possible.



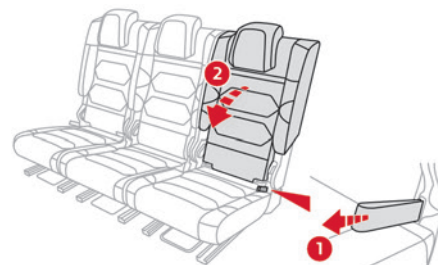
- Move the seat forward.
- Pull the strap forward, then tilt the backrest to the desired position.

## Folding the backrests

**!** Manoeuvring the backrests should only be done when the vehicle is stationary.

First steps:

- Lower the head restraints.
- If necessary, move the front seats forward.
- Check that no person or object might interfere with the folding of the backrests (e.g. clothing, luggage).
- Check that the outer seat belts are properly tensioned along the pillars, the central belt is stowed and the tongues of the three belts are correctly in the stowed position.



- Pull the strap **1** firmly to release the backrest.
- Guide the backrest **2** down to the horizontal position.

## Repositioning the backrests

**!** Before raising the backrest of the outer seats to the normal position, remember to retrieve the seat belt and hold it during the operation.

- Put the backrest **2** in the upright position and push it firmly to latch it home.
- Check that the release strap **1** has correctly returned to its position.
- Ensure that the outer seat belts were not trapped during the operation.

**!** Please note: an incorrectly latched backrest compromises the safety of passengers in the event of sudden braking or an accident.

The contents of the boot may be thrown forwards - risk of serious injury!

# Heating and Ventilation

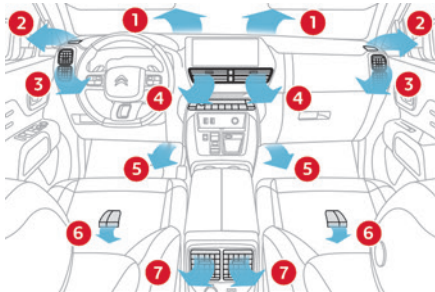
## Air intake

The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the exterior, via the grille located at the base of the windscreen, or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

## Controls

The controls are accessible in the **Climate** touch screen menu and are also grouped together on the centre console panel.

## Air distribution



1. Windscreen demisting/de-icing vents
2. Front side window demisting/de-icing vents
3. Adjustable and closable side air vents
4. Adjustable and closable central air vents
5. Air outlets to the front footwells
6. Air outlets to the rear footwells
7. Air outlets to the rear footwells

7. Adjustable and closable air vents, with blower (depending on version)

## Advice

### Using the ventilation and air conditioning system

► To ensure that air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.

► Do not cover the sunshine sensor located on the dashboard; this sensor is used to regulate the automatic air conditioning system.

► Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes once or twice a month to keep it in good working order.

► If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing a large load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power, enhancing the towing capacity.

**!** Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off or with prolonged operation of interior air recirculation. Risk of misting and deterioration of the air quality!



If the interior temperature is very high after the vehicle has stood for a long time in the sunshine, air the passenger compartment for a few moments. Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

**i** Condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water underneath the vehicle. This is perfectly normal.

### Servicing the ventilation and air conditioning system

► Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly. We recommend using a composite passenger compartment filter. Its specific active additive helps protect against polluting gases and bad smells.

► To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, have it checked according to the recommendations in the Manufacturer's service schedule.

### Stop & Start

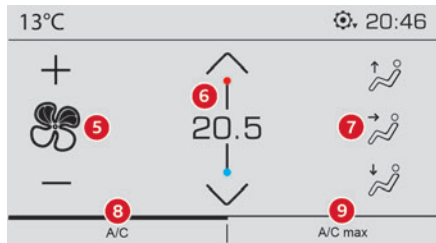
**i** The heating and air conditioning systems only operate when the engine is running.

Temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.  
For more information on the **Stop & Start** system, refer to the corresponding section.

## Manual air conditioning



Press the **Climate** menu button located under the touch screen to display the system controls page.



1. Automatic Visibility programme.
2. Recirculation of interior air.
3. Rear screen demisting/de-icing.
4. System switch-off.
5. Air flow adjustment.

6. Temperature adjustment.
7. Air distribution adjustment.
8. Air conditioning on/off.
9. Maximum air conditioning.

The air conditioning system only operates with the engine running.

## Temperature adjustment

► Press one of the arrows **6** to decrease (blue) or increase (red) the value.

The value indicated corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.

For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, press the temperature setting button down or up until **LO** or **HI** is displayed.

## Air flow adjustment

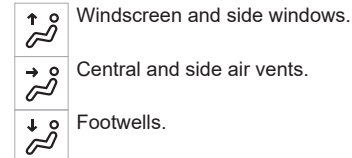
► Press one of the buttons **5** to increase (+) or decrease (-) the speed of the ventilation fan. The air flow symbol (a fan) is filled in progressively as the speed of the fan is increased.

By reducing the air flow to a minimum, you are stopping ventilation.

! Avoid driving for too long without ventilation - risk of condensation and deterioration of air quality!

## Air distribution adjustment

You can vary the air distribution in the passenger compartment using the three buttons **7**.



Each press on a button activates or deactivates the function. The indicator lamp is on when the button is activated. For a uniform distribution of air in the passenger compartment, the three buttons can be activated simultaneously.

## Automatic visibility programme

For more information on the button **1** "Automatic Visibility Programme", refer to the section "Front Demisting/Defrosting".

## Air conditioning on/off

The air conditioning system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed:

- It lowers the temperature in summer.
- It increases the effectiveness of the demisting, in winter, above 3°C.

► Press button **8** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

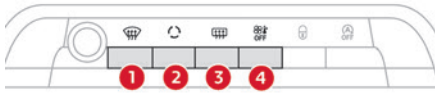
When the system is activated, the indicator lamp comes on.


**i** Air conditioning does not operate when the air flow is deactivated.

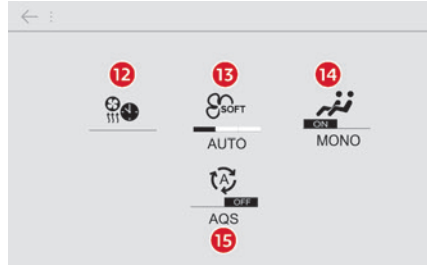
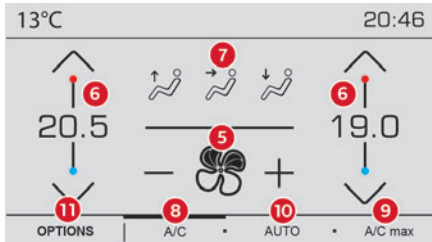
To obtain cool air more quickly, enable interior air recirculation for a brief period. Then return to the intake of exterior air.

Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity or misting).

## Dual-zone automatic air conditioning



 Press the **Climate** menu button located under the touch screen to display the system controls page.



1. Automatic Visibility programme.
2. Recirculation of interior air.
3. Rear screen demisting/de-icing.
4. System switch-off.
5. Air flow adjustment.
6. Temperature adjustment.
7. Air distribution adjustment.
8. Air conditioning on/off.
9. Maximum air conditioning.
10. Activation of the Automatic Comfort programme.
11. Access to the secondary page.
12. Passenger compartment pre-conditioning (depending on version).
13. Selection of setting for the Automatic Comfort programme (Soft/Normal/Fast).
14. Mono-zone/Dual-zone.
15. "AQS" (Air Quality System) function (depending on version).

This air conditioning system operates with the engine running, but the ventilation and its controls are available with just the ignition on.

Operation of the air conditioning and regulation of temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment are automatic.

## Temperature adjustment

The driver and front passenger can each set the temperature independently of one another.

► Press one of the buttons **6** to decrease (blue) or increase (red) the value.

The value indicated corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature. It is recommended that you avoid a difference of more than 3 in the settings for left and right.

**i** For maximum cooling or heating of the passenger compartment, press the temperature setting button down or up until **LO** or **HI** is displayed.

## Automatic comfort programme

► Press button **10 "AUTO"** to activate automatic mode of the air conditioning system.

When the indicator lamp in the button is on, the air conditioning system operates automatically: the system manages the temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment in an optimum way according to the comfort level you have selected.

It is possible to adjust the intensity of the automatic comfort programme by choosing one

of the settings offered in the secondary page, accessible from button **11 "OPTIONS"**.

To change the current setting, shown by illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp, press button **13** repeatedly until the desired mode is displayed:

**"Soft"**: provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.

**"Normal"**: offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation (default setting).

**"Fast"**: provides strong and effective air flow.

Use the **"Normal"** or **"Fast"** modes to ensure the comfort of passengers in the rear seats.

This setting is associated with automatic mode only. However, on deactivation of **AUTO** mode, the indicator lamp for the last setting remains on. Changing the setting does not reactivate **AUTO** mode if this was deactivated.

**i** In cold weather with the engine cold, the air flow is increased gradually until the comfort setting has been reached, in order to limit the delivery of cold air into the passenger compartment.

On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort setting requested, there is no need to alter the value displayed to more quickly reach the required level of comfort. The system automatically corrects the temperature difference as quickly as possible.

## Automatic visibility programme

For more information on the button **1 "Automatic Visibility Programme"**, refer to the section **"Front Demisting/Defrosting"**.

## "Air Quality System" (AQS) function

Using a pollution sensor, this function automatically activates recirculation of the interior air once a certain level of polluting substances in the exterior air is detected. When the air quality returns to a satisfactory level, recirculation of interior air is automatically deactivated.

This function is not designed to detect unpleasant odours.

Recirculation is automatically activated when the windscreen wash is used or when reverse gear is engaged.

The function does not operate if the exterior temperature is below 5 °C, to avoid the risk of misting of the windscreen and side windows.

To activate or deactivate the function, go to the secondary page by using button **11 "OPTIONS"**, then press button **15**.

## Manual control

You can manually adjust one or more of these functions, while retaining automatic control of the other functions by the system:

- air flow, button **5**,
- air distribution, button **7**,

As soon as you change a setting, the indicator lamp for the button **10 "AUTO"** goes out.

▶ Press button **10** again to reactivate the automatic comfort programme.

## Air flow adjustment

▶ Press one of the buttons **5** to increase (+) or decrease (-) the fan speed.

The air flow symbol (a fan) is filled in progressively as the speed of the fan is increased.




By reducing the air flow to minimum, you are stopping ventilation.

**"OFF"** is displayed alongside the fan.

**!** Avoid driving for too long without ventilation - risk of condensation and deterioration of air quality!

## Air distribution adjustment

You can vary the air distribution in the passenger compartment using the three buttons **7**.

-  Windscreen and side windows.
-  Central and side air vents.
-  Footwells.

Each press on a button activates or deactivates the function. The indicator lamp is on when the button is activated. For a uniform distribution



of air in the passenger compartment, the three buttons can be activated simultaneously. In **AUTO** mode, the indicator lamps in all three buttons **7** are off.

## Air conditioning on/off

The air conditioning system is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed:

- It lowers the temperature in summer.
- It increases the effectiveness of the demisting, in winter, above 3°C.

► Press button **8** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

When the system is activated, the indicator lamp comes on.

**i** Air conditioning does not operate when the air flow is deactivated.

To obtain cool air more quickly, enable interior air recirculation for a brief period. Then return to the intake of exterior air.

Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity or misting).

## Mono-zone/Dual-zone

The passenger temperature setting can be linked to the driver's setting (mono-zone function). It is available in the secondary page by pressing button **11** "**OPTIONS**".

► Press button **14** to activate the "**MONO**" function; its status is displayed as "**ON**".

The function is automatically deactivated if the passenger uses their temperature adjustment buttons (dual-zone function).


## Ventilation with the ignition on

When the ignition is switched on, you can use the ventilation system to adjust the air flow **5** and air distribution **7** settings in the passenger compartment, for a period which depends on the battery charge.

This function does not allow the operation of the air conditioning system.

## Interior air recirculation


The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows. Recirculating the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from outside odours and fumes and allows the desired passenger compartment temperature to be achieved more rapidly.

 ► Press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator lamp).

**i** The function is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

## Maximum air conditioning

This function automatically adjusts the temperature setting to the lowest possible, the air distribution towards the central and side air vents, the air flow to maximum and, if necessary, activates interior air recirculation.

 ► Press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator lamp). Once the function is deactivated, the system returns to the previous settings.

## Switching the system off

 ► Press this button.

Its indicator lamp comes on and all of the other indicator lamps for the system go off. This action deactivates all of the functions of the air conditioning system. The temperature is no longer regulated. A slight flow of air can still be felt, due to the forward movement of the vehicle.

## Front demisting - defrosting

### Automatic Visibility programme

This mode allows the windscreen and side windows to be demisted or defrosted as quickly as possible.



► Press this button to activate/deactivate the mode (confirmed by the illumination/extinction of the indicator lamp).

The programme automatically manages the air conditioning (depending on version), air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows. It is possible to manually change the air flow without deactivating the automatic Visibility programme.

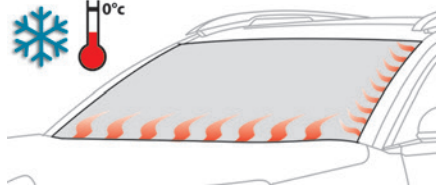


With Stop & Start, when demisting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.



In wintry conditions, before moving off, it is essential to remove any snow or ice from the windscreen around the camera. Otherwise, the operation of the equipment using the camera may be affected.

## Heated windscreen



In cold weather, this system heats the bottom of the windscreen, as well as the area alongside the left-hand windscreen pillar.

Without changing the settings for the air conditioning system, it allows faster release of the windscreen wiper blades when they are frozen to the windscreen and helps avoid the accumulation of snow resulting from the operation of the windscreen wipers.

## Switching on/off



► With the engine running, press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by an indicator lamp).

The function is activated when the outside temperature drops below 0°C. It is deactivated automatically when the engine is switched off.

## Rear screen demisting/defrosting

This demisting/de-icing only works with the engine running.

Depending on version, it also demists/de-ices the door mirrors.



► Press this button to activate/deactivate the function (confirmed by the indicator lamp coming on/switching off).

Demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent an excessive consumption of electrical current.



Switch off demisting/defrosting when you no longer need it; reducing electrical consumption in turn decreases energy consumption.

## Temperature pre-conditioning (Rechargeable hybrid)

This function allows you to programme the temperature in the passenger compartment to reach a pre-defined, non-modifiable temperature (approx. 21°C) before you enter the vehicle, on the days and at the times of your choice. This function is available when the vehicle is connected or not connected.

### Programming

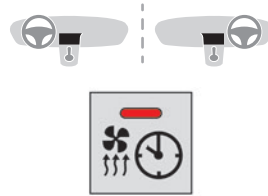
(With CITROËN Connect Nav)  
In the **Climate > OPTIONS** menu:



Select **Temperature conditioning**.

- ▶ Press **+** to add a programme.
- ▶ Select the time of entry into the vehicle and the desired days. Press **OK**.
- ▶ Press **ON** to activate this programming.

The pre-conditioning sequence begins approximately 45 minutes before the programmed time when the vehicle is connected (20 minutes when it is not connected) and is maintained for 10 minutes after.



This indicator lamp comes on fixed when a temperature pre-conditioning cycle is programmed. It flashes when temperature pre-conditioning is in progress.

**i** You can set multiple programmes. Each one is saved in the system.

To optimise the driving range, we recommend starting a programme while the vehicle is connected.



Programming can also be carried out from a smartphone using the **MyCitroën App** application.

With CITROËN Connect Radio, programming can only be carried out from a smartphone using the application.

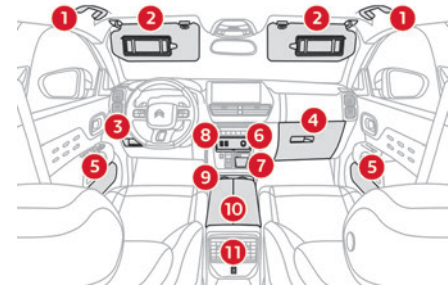
For more information on **Remote functions**, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** The fan noise that occurs during temperature pre-conditioning is perfectly normal.

## Operating conditions

- The function is only activated when the **ignition is switched off** and the **vehicle locked**.
- When the vehicle is not connected, the function is only activated if the battery charge level is greater than 20%.
- When the vehicle is not connected and a recurring programme is active (e.g. from Monday to Friday), if two temperature pre-conditioning sequences are run without the vehicle being used, the programme will be deactivated.

## Front fittings



1. Grab handle
2. Sun visor
3. Storage compartment below the steering wheel  
Card holder
4. Illuminated glove box

5. Door pockets
6. USB sockets  
Cigarette lighter/12 V accessory socket (120 W).
7. Storage compartment
8. Storage compartment or Wireless charger
9. Cup holder
10. Front armrest with storage
11. USB charger socket

**!** Make sure you do not leave any item in the passenger compartment which could act like a magnifying glass under the effect of the sun's rays and cause a fire - risk of fire or damage to interior surfaces!

## Sun visor

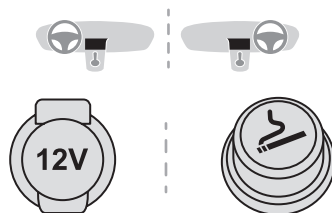
► With the ignition on, raise the concealing flap; depending on the version, the mirror is illuminated automatically.  
This sun visor is also equipped with a ticket holder.

## Glove box

► To open the glove box, lift the handle.  
With the ignition on, the glove box is lit when open.  
It houses the front passenger airbag deactivation switch.

**!** Never drive with the glove box open when a passenger is at the front. It may cause injury during sharp deceleration!

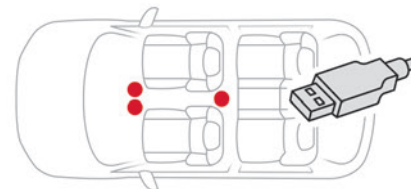
## Cigarette lighter/12 V accessory socket(s)





► To use the cigarette lighter, press it in and wait a few seconds until it pops out automatically.  
► To use a 12 V accessory (max. power: 120 W), remove the cigarette lighter and connect a suitable adaptor.  
You can use this socket to connect a telephone charger, a bottle warmer, etc.  
After use, put the cigarette lighter back into place straight away.

**!** The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

## USB sockets



USB sockets allow the connection of a portable device.

  The USB socket on the left-hand side (chrome plated) also allows a smartphone to be connected by Android Auto® or CarPlay®, enabling certain smartphone applications to be used on the touch screen. For best results, use a cable made or approved by the device manufacturer.  
These applications can be managed using the steering-mounted controls or the audio system controls.

**i** When the USB socket is used, the portable device charges automatically. While charging, a message is displayed if the power drawn by the portable device exceeds the current supplied by the vehicle. For more information about how to use this equipment, refer to the sections describing the audio and telematics systems.

## Wireless smartphone charger



This system allows wireless charging of a portable device such as a smartphone, using the magnetic induction principle, in accordance with the Qi 1.1 standard.

The portable device to be charged must be compatible with the Qi standard, either by design or by using a compatible holder or shell.

A mat can also be used provided that it is approved by the Manufacturer.

The charging area is identified by the Qi symbol.

The charger works with the engine running and with the Stop & Start system in STOP mode.

Charging is managed by the smartphone.

With the Keyless Entry and Start system, the charger's operation may be briefly disrupted when a door is opened or the ignition is switched off.

### Charging

► With the charging area clear, place a device in its centre.



When the portable device is detected, the charger's indicator lamp lights up green. It remains lit for the whole time that the battery is being charged.

! The system is not designed to charge multiple devices simultaneously.

! Do not leave metal objects (e.g. coins, keys, vehicle remote control) in the charging area while a device is being charged - Risk of overheating or interrupting the charging!



! When using applications for a long time in combination with wireless charging, some smartphones may switch to thermal safety and cause some functions to stop.

### Checking operation

The state of the indicator lamp allows the operation of the charger to be monitored.

State of the indicator lamp	Meaning
Off	Engine switched off. No compatible devices detected. Charging complete.
Fixed green	Compatible portable device detected. Charging.
Flashing orange	Foreign object detected in the charging zone. Portable device not well centred in the charging zone.
Fixed orange	Malfunction of the portable device's battery meter. Device battery temperature too high. Charger malfunction.



If the indicator lamp is fixed orange:

– remove the device, then place it back in the centre of the charging zone.

or

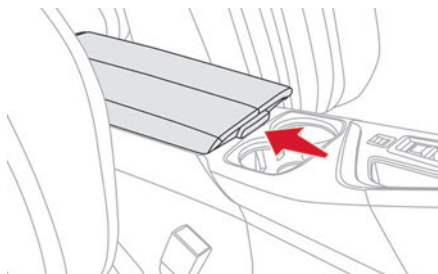
– remove the device and try again in a quarter of an hour.

If the problem persists, have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Front armrest

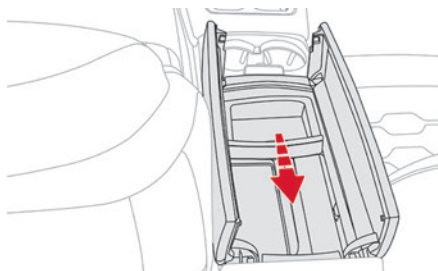
It includes a refrigerated storage space (depending on version) and is illuminated when the cover is opened.

### Opening



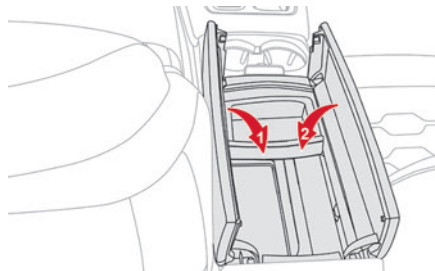
- ▶ Press the lever beneath the cover. The cover opens in two parts.

### Storage



The small removable tray can be installed in front of or behind the storage space. A ventilation nozzle circulates fresh air.

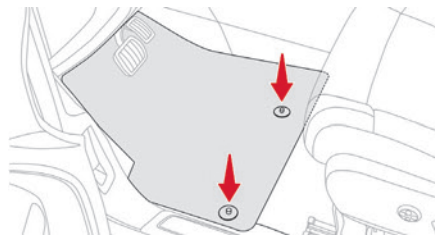
### Closing



- ▶ Fold back the two parts of the cover.

## Mats

### Fitting



When fitting it on the driver's side, only use the mountings present on the carpet (a "click" indicates proper locking).

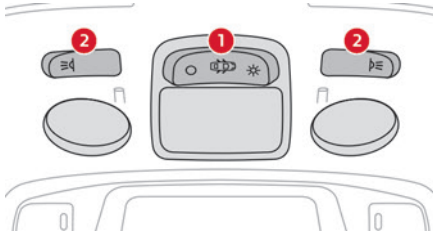
The other mats are simply laid over the carpet.

### Removing/refitting

- ▶ To remove it on the driver's side, move the seat backwards and unclip the fasteners.
- ▶ To refit it, position the mat and secure it by pressing down.
- ▶ Check that the mat is secured correctly.

- ! To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
  - Only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used.
  - Never fit one mat on top of another.The use of mats not approved by CITROËN may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter. The approved mats have two fasteners located underneath the seat.

## Courtesy lamps



1. Front courtesy lamp
2. Front reading lamps



3. Rear courtesy lamp
4. Rear reading lamps

## Front and rear courtesy lamps



In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when the vehicle is unlocked.
- when the key is removed from the ignition switch.

- when a door is opened.
  - when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate the vehicle.
- It switches off gradually:
- when the vehicle is locked.
  - when the ignition is switched on.
  - 30 seconds after the last door is closed.



Permanently off.



Permanent lighting.

In "Permanent lighting" mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- With the ignition off, approximately 10 minutes.
- In energy saving mode, approximately 30 seconds.
- With the engine running, unlimited.



When the front courtesy lamp is in the "Permanent lighting" position, the rear courtesy lamp also comes on, unless it is in the "Permanently off" position.

To switch off the rear courtesy lamp, put it in the "Permanently off" position.

## Reading lamps



▶ With the ignition on, operate the corresponding switch.



Take care not to place anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

## Interior ambient lighting

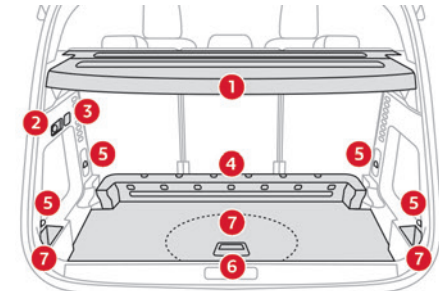
# 3

Soft passenger compartment lighting improves visibility inside the vehicle in low-light conditions.



You can activate/deactivate this function, adjust the brightness and select a colour in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

## Boot fittings



1. Load space cover
2. 12 V accessory socket (120 W)
3. Boot lamp
4. Removable rear seat crossmember (to increase the volume of the boot).
5. Stowing rings
6. Adjustable boot floor (2-position)  
Folding boot carpet (Rechargeable hybrid)
7. Storage wells/Tool box under the floor

**i** The stowing rings are designed to secure luggage using different types of retaining nets.

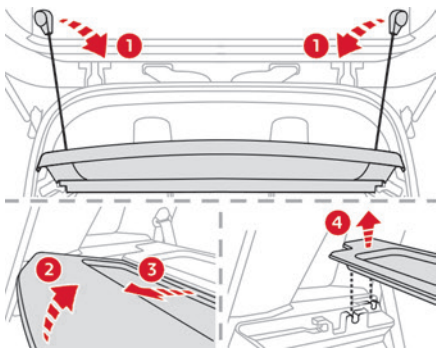
These retaining nets are available as an accessory.

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Load space cover

It is in two parts:

- a fixed part with an open storage space,
- a movable part which rises when the boot is opened, with an open storage space.



To remove the load space cover:

- ▶ unhook the two cords **1**,
- ▶ gently lift the movable part **2**, then unclip it on both sides **3**,
- ▶ unclip the fixed part on each side **4**, then remove the load space cover.

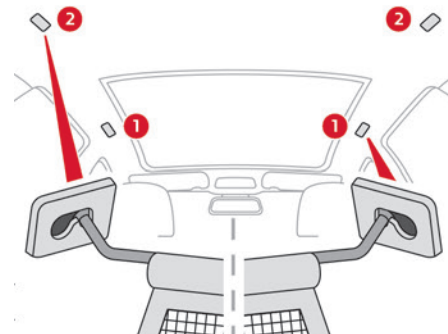
**!** When sharp deceleration occurs, objects placed on the load space cover can turn into projectiles.

## 12 V accessory socket

- ▶ To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 W), lift the cover and plug in a suitable adaptor.
- ▶ Switch on the ignition.

**!** The connection of an electrical device not approved by CITROËN, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

## High load retaining net



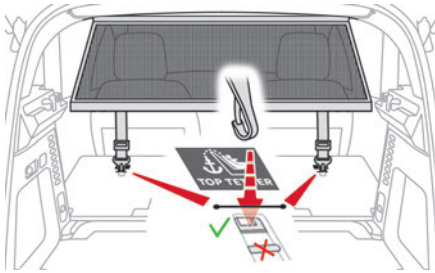
This removable net allows the entire loading volume up to the roof to be used:

- behind the front seats (1<sup>st</sup> row) when the rear seats are folded down.
- behind the rear seats (2<sup>nd</sup> row) when the load space cover is removed.

**i** It protects the occupants in case of sudden braking.

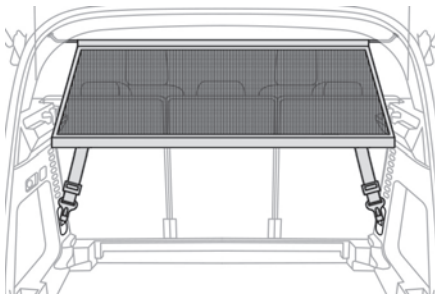


## Behind the front seats



- ▶ Fold down the rear seats.
- ▶ Insert the ends of the bar, one after the other, into the fixing points in the roof.
- ▶ Attach the net's straps to the upper anchoring points, located in the housing of the Top Tether fixings.
- ▶ Pull on the straps to stretch the net.

## Behind the rear seats



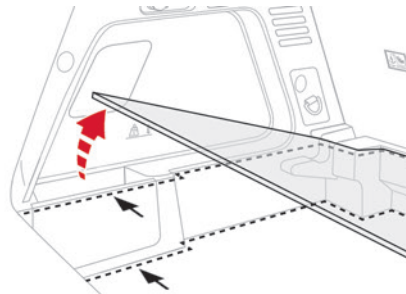
- ▶ Remove the load space cover.

- ▶ Insert the ends of the bar, one after the other, into the fixing points of the roof.
- ▶ Attach the straps of the net to the lower rings, located on each side trim of the boot.
- ▶ Pull on the straps to stretch the net.

## 2-position boot floor

Depending on equipment, this two-position floor allows the boot volume to be optimised using the lateral stops located on the sides:

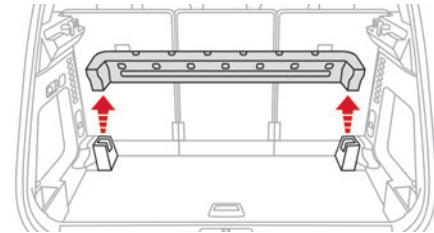
- High position (**100 kg max.**): to obtain a flat floor up to the front seats, when the rear seats are folded down.
- Low position (**150 kg max.**): maximum boot volume.



To change the height:

- ▶ Lift and pull the floor towards you using its central handle, then use the lateral stops to move it.
- ▶ Push the floor fully forwards to place it in the desired position.

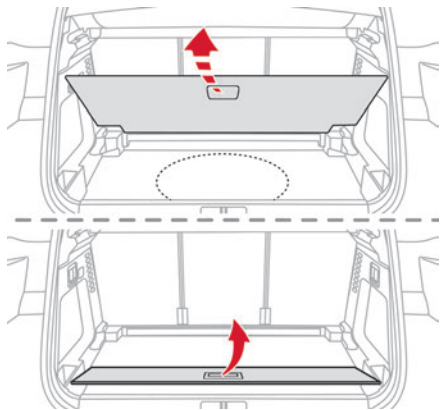
- i** Ensure that the boot is empty before moving the boot floor.



To increase the boot volume with the floor in the low position:

- ▶ Pull the rear seat crossmember up vertically to the level of the markings.
- ▶ To put it back in place, push it as far as it will go until it engages.

## Storage well



► Lift the boot floor as far as possible or lift the folding boot carpet (depending on version) to access the storage well.

Depending on version, it includes:

- A temporary puncture repair kit with the tool kit.
- A spare wheel with the tool kit.
- The traction battery charging cable (Rechargeable hybrid).

## Boot lamp

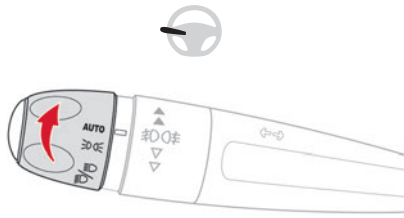
It comes on automatically when the boot is opened and goes off automatically when the boot is closed.



The lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- When the ignition is off, approximately 10 minutes.
- In energy saving mode, approximately 30 seconds.
- With the engine running, unlimited.

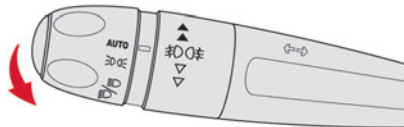
## Lighting control stalk

### Main lighting



- AUTO** Automatic illumination of lamps/daytime running lamps
-  Sidelamps only
-  Dipped or main beam headlamps


### Headlamp dipping




- ▶ Pull the stalk to switch between dipped and main beam headlamps.

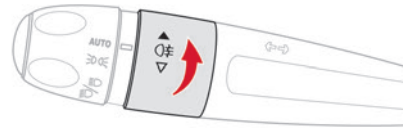
### Displays

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp on the instrument panel confirms that the selected lighting is on.

-  A fault with a lamp is signalled by the permanent illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

### Rear foglamps


-  They only work if the dipped or main beam headlamps are on.

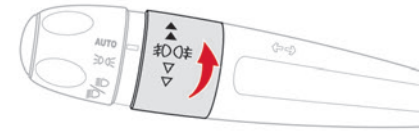


- ▶ Rotate the ring forwards/backwards to turn them on/off.

When the lighting is switched off automatically ("AUTO" position) the foglamps and the dipped beam headlamps remain on.

### Front foglamps/Rear foglamps

-  They operate with the sidelamps, dipped or main beam headlamps on.



- ▶ Rotate the ring forwards:
  - once to switch on the front foglamps,
  - a second time to switch on the rear foglamps.
- ▶ Turn in the opposite direction to switch off. If the lighting is switched off automatically ("AUTO" position) or the dipped beam headlamps are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.
- ▶ Rotate the ring backwards to switch the foglamps off; the sidelamps will then switch off.

**!** Switching on the foglamps is prohibited in clear weather or in rain, both day and night. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They must only be used in fog or falling snow (rules may vary depending on country). Do not forget to switch off the foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

### **i** Switching on the lamps after switching off the ignition

To reactivate the lighting control, rotate the ring to the "AUTO" position, then to the desired position.

If the driver's door is opened, a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lamps are on.

They will go off automatically after a period of time that depends on the level of charge in the battery (entering energy economy mode).

### **i** Switching off of the lamps when the ignition is switched off

When the ignition is switched off, all of the lamps turn off immediately, except for dipped beam headlamps if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

**i** In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal, and will disappear after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

**!** Never look too closely at the light beam of LED technology lamps - risk of serious eye injury!



### **i** Travelling abroad

If planning to use your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the dipped beam headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling oncoming drivers. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

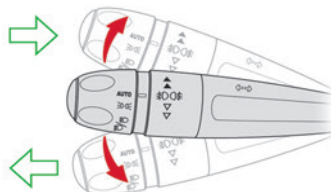
## Daytime running lamps/ Sidelamps

These LED lamps at the front and rear of the vehicle light up automatically when the engine starts.

They perform the following functions:

- Daytime running lamps (lighting control stalk at position "AUTO" with adequate ambient light).
- Sidelamps (lighting control stalk at position "AUTO" with low ambient light or "Sidelamps only" or "Dipped/main beam headlamps").

## Direction indicators



- ▶ Left or right: lower or raise the lighting control stalk, beyond the point of resistance.

**i** If you keep the direction indicators on for more than 20 seconds, the volume of the audible signal will increase if the speed is above 50 mph (80 km/h).

## Three flashes

- ▶ Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

## Parking lamps

(Depending on version)

Vehicle side marking by lighting the sidelamps on the traffic side only.

- ▶ Within one minute after switching off the ignition, operate the lighting control stalk upwards or downwards, depending on the side of the traffic (e.g. when parking on the right, push the lighting control stalk down to light up on the left).

This is confirmed by an audible signal and the lighting of the corresponding direction indicator lamp on the instrument panel.

- ▶ To switch off the parking lamps, return the lighting control stalk to the central position.

## Automatic illumination of lamps

With the lighting control stalk in the "AUTO" position and if a low level of exterior brightness is detected by the rain/sunshine sensor, the

sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They may also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers.

As soon as the brightness returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

## Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction of the rain/sunshine sensor, the vehicle's lamps come on and this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and/or the display of a message. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the interior rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

**i** In fog or snow, the rain/sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. For this reason, the lighting will not come on automatically.

**i** The inner surface of the windscreen may become misted up and affect the proper operation of the rain/sunshine sensor. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

## Guide-me-home and welcome lighting

### Guide-me-home lighting

#### Automatic

With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the "AUTO" position and when the light is poor, the dipped beam headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.



You can activate/deactivate this function and adjust the guide-me-home lighting duration in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

#### Manual



▶ With the ignition off, pull the lighting control stalk toward you ("headlamp flash") to activate/deactivate the function.

Manual guide-me-home lighting goes off automatically after a period of time.

### Automatic exterior welcome lighting

With the "Automatic illumination of lamps" function activated and when the light is poor, the sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps and door mirror spotlamps come on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked.



The activation, deactivation and duration of the exterior welcome lighting are set in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

### Door mirror spotlamps

These spotlamps facilitate access to the vehicle by lighting the ground near the front doors.

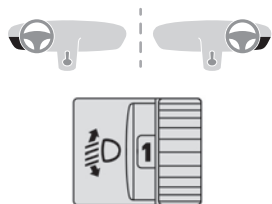


When the front courtesy lamp switch is in this position, the spotlamps come on automatically:

- when the vehicle is unlocked.
- when a door is opened.
- when a request to locate the vehicle is received from the remote control.

Whatever the position of the front courtesy lamp switch, they also come on with the welcome lighting and guide-me-home lighting functions. They go off automatically after 30 seconds.

## Headlamp beam height adjustment



To avoid dazzling other road users, the height of these headlamp beams must be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

### 0 (Initial setting)

Driver only or driver + front passenger

1 5 people

4 5 people + load in the boot

5 Driver only + load in the boot

This information is provided as a guide only. Depending on version, the unused positions may be required.

## Automatic lighting systems - General recommendations

The automatic lighting systems use a detection camera, located at the top of the windscreen.

### Operating limits

The system may be disrupted or not work correctly:

- When visibility conditions are poor (e.g. snowfall, heavy rain).
- If the windscreen is dirty, misted-up or masked (e.g. sticker) in front of the camera.
- If the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs or safety barrier reflectors.

The system is not able to detect:

- Road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians.
- Vehicles with hidden lighting (e.g. travelling behind a safety barrier on the motorway).
- Vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

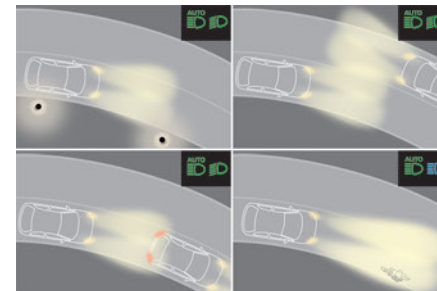
### Maintenance

Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera. The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly. Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could obstruct the camera.

## Automatic headlamp dipping

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations for automatic lighting systems.**


With the ring of the lighting control stalk in the "AUTO" position and the function activated on the touch screen, this system automatically switches between dipped and main beam headlamps, according to lighting and traffic conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.



! This system is a driving aid. The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use in the prevailing light, visibility and traffic conditions, and for compliance with driving and vehicle regulations.

**i** The system becomes operational when the vehicle exceeds 16 mph (25 km/h). When the speed falls below 9 mph (15 km/h), the function is no longer operational.



## Activation/Deactivation



 The settings are changed via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

When deactivated, the lighting system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode. The state of the system is stored when the ignition is switched off.

## Operation


If the ambient light level is very low and traffic conditions permit:

  – The main beam headlamps come on automatically. These indicator lamps light up on the instrument panel. If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or the traffic conditions do not allow the main beam headlamps to be lit:

  – The dipped beam headlamps remain lit. These indicator lamps light up on the instrument panel.

The function is deactivated if the foglamps are switched on or if the system detects poor visibility conditions (e.g. fog, heavy rain, snowfall).

When the foglamps are switched off or when the visibility conditions become favourable again, the function is automatically reactivated.

 This indicator lamp goes out when the function is deactivated.

## Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.

► Switch the headlamps manually between dipped and main beam to pause the function. If the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to main beam.

If the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps were on, the system changes to dipped beam.

► To reactivate the function, once again switch the headlamps manually between dipped and main beam.

## Cornering lighting


(Only on versions equipped with halogen foglamps)

This system makes use of the beam from a front foglamp to illuminate the inside of a bend, when the main or dipped beam headlamps are on and the vehicle speed is below 25 mph (40 km/h) (urban driving, winding road, junctions, parking manoeuvres).



Without/With cornering lighting

## Activation / Deactivation

 It is set via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

## Switching on/off

This system starts:

- when the corresponding direction indicator is switched on.

or

- from a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.

It becomes inactive:

- below a certain angle of rotation of the steering wheel.
- above approximately 25 mph (40 km/h).
- when reverse gear is engaged.

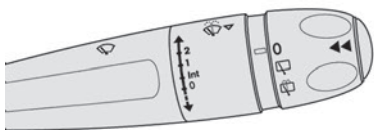
## Wiper control stalk

**i** Before operating the wipers in wintry conditions, clear any snow, ice or frost from the windscreen and around the wiper arms and blades.

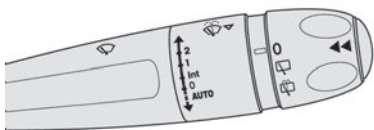
**!** Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. In extremely hot or cold weather, check that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

**i** After using an automatic car wash, you may temporarily notice abnormal noises and poorer wiping performance. You do not need to replace the wiper blades.

## Without AUTO wiping



## With AUTO wiping



## Windscreen wipers

► To select the wiping speed: raise or lower the stalk to the desired position.

- 2** Fast wiping (heavy rain)
  - 1** Normal wiping (moderate rain)
  - Int** Intermittent wiping (proportional to the vehicle's speed)
  - 0** Off
  - ↓** Single wipe (press down and release).
- or
- AUTO** Automatic wiping

Refer to the corresponding section.

**i** In position 1 or 2, the wiping frequency is automatically reduced when the speed of the vehicle drops below 3 mph (5 km/h). When the speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h) again, the wiping frequency returns to the original frequency (fast or normal).

**i** After switching off the ignition, a slight movement of the windscreen wipers to store them under the bonnet may occur.

**i** If the ignition has been switched off with the windscreen wiper active, it is necessary to operate the control stalk to reactivate the wiping when the ignition is

switched on (unless the ignition is off for less than 1 minute).

## Windscreen wash

► Pull the wiper control stalk towards you and hold.

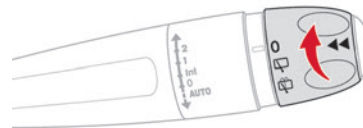
A final wiping cycle is performed when screenwashing ends.

**i** The windscreen wash jets are incorporated into the tip of each wiper arm.

Screenwash fluid is sprayed along the length of the wiper blade. This improves visibility and reduces screenwash fluid consumption.

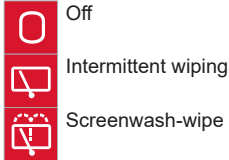
**!** To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the screenwash if the screenwash reservoir is empty. Only operate the screenwash if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. During the winter period, use "very cold climate" rated products. Never top up with water.

## Rear wiper





- Turn the ring to align the desired symbol with the marking.



### Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the front windscreen wipers are operating. The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle settings menu in the screen. This function is activated by default.

! In the event of accumulation of snow or hard frost or if a bicycle carrier is fitted to a towing device, deactivate the automatic rear wiper via the touch screen's **Driving/ Vehicle** menu.

### Rear screenwash

- Turn the ring all the way towards the dashboard and hold. The screenwash and the wiper operate for as long as the ring remains turned. A final wiping cycle is performed when screenwashing ends.

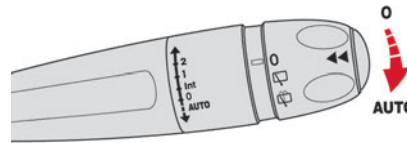
## Automatic windscreen wipers

In **AUTO** mode, the windscreen wipers operate automatically and adapt to the intensity of the rainfall.

Detection is via a rain/brightness sensor, located at the top centre of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror.

! Do not cover the rain/sunshine sensor. When using an automatic car wash, switch off the automatic wipers and the ignition. In winter, wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic wipers.

### Switching on



- Give a short downwards push to the control stalk.

A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.

**AUTO** This indicator lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

## Switching off

- Give the control stalk another brief push downwards or set the control stalk to another position (**Int, 1 or 2**).

**AUTO** This indicator lamp goes off on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

i If the ignition has been off for more than one minute, the automatic wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards.

## Malfunction

If a fault occurs with the automatic wipers, the wipers operate in intermittent mode. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Special position of the windscreen wipers

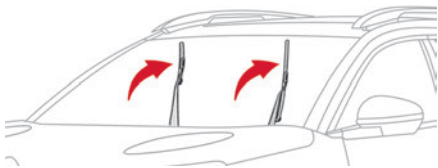
This maintenance position is used while cleaning or replacing the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in wintry weather (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

i To maintain the effectiveness of the flat wiper blades, it is advisable to:

- handle them with care.
- clean them regularly using soapy water.

- avoid using them to hold cardboard on the windscreen.
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

### Before removing a windscreen wiper blade



Operating the wiper control stalk immediately after switching off the ignition will place the wiper blades in a vertical position.

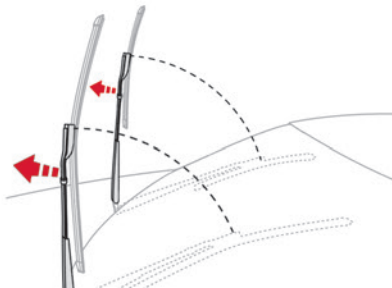
- ▶ Proceed with the desired operation or the replacement of the wiper blades.

### After refitting a windscreen wiper blade

- ▶ To return the wiper blades to their initial position after the operation, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper control stalk.

## Changing a wiper blade

### Removing/Refitting at the front



- ▶ Carry out these wiper blade replacement operations from the driver's side.
- ▶ Starting with the wiper blade farthest from you, hold each arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.

**!** Take care not to hold the arms at the jet locations.

Do not touch the wiper blades - risk of irreparable deformation.

Do not release them while moving them. Risk of damaging the windscreen!

- ▶ Clean the windscreen using screenwash fluid.

**i** Do not apply "Rain X" type water-repellent products.

- ▶ Unclip the worn wiper blade closest to you and remove it.
- ▶ Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
- ▶ Repeat the procedure for the other wiper blade.
- ▶ Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold each arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the windscreen.

### Removing/refitting at the rear

- ▶ Hold the arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.
- ▶ Clean the rear screen using screenwash fluid.
- ▶ Unclip the worn wiper blade and remove it.
- ▶ Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
- ▶ Once again hold the arm by the rigid section, then guide it carefully onto the rear screen.

## General safety recommendations

**!** Do not remove the labels attached in different places on your vehicle. They include safety warnings as well as identification information for the vehicle.

**!** For all work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide.

**!** Depending on country regulations, certain safety equipment may be mandatory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

**!** **Installing electrical accessories:**

- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by CITROËN may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a CITROËN dealer for information on the range of approved accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for

CITROËN dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The Manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.

- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by CITROËN or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the Manufacturer will result in the suspension of the commercial warranty.

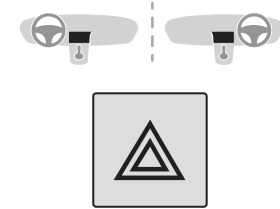
### **!** Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters

Before installing a radio communication transmitter with an external aerial, you must without fail contact a CITROËN dealer for the specification of transmitters which can be fitted (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

### **i** Declarations of conformity for radio equipment

The relevant certificates are available on the brand website:  
<http://service.citroen.com/ACddb/>

## Hazard warning lamps



► Pressing the red button causes all the direction indicators to flash. They can operate with the ignition off.

## Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically. They switch off automatically when you next accelerate. They can be turned off by pressing the button again.

## Horn



- ▶ Press the central part of the steering wheel.

## Pedestrian horn (Rechargeable hybrid)

This system alerts pedestrians that the vehicle is approaching, when driving in **Electric** mode (100% electric driving).

The pedestrian horn operates once the vehicle is moving and at speeds of up to 19 mph (30 km/h), in forward or reverse gear. This function cannot be deactivated.

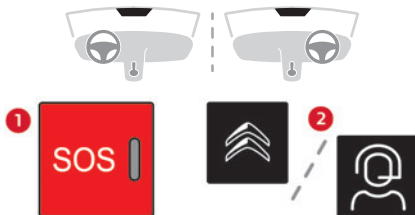
### Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Emergency or assistance call



### eCall (SOS)

Your vehicle may be fitted with the eCall (SOS) system either as standard or as an option. The eCall (SOS) system provides direct contact to the emergency services and is fully built into the vehicle. This contact is made either automatically via the sensors built into the vehicle, or by pressing button 1.

According to the country of sale, the eCall (SOS) system corresponds to the systems PE112, ERAGLONASS, 999, etc.

The eCall (SOS) system is activated by default.

- ▶ To make an emergency call manually, press button 1 for more than 2 seconds.

The lit indicator lamp and a voice message confirm that the call has been made to the emergency services\*.

The eCall (SOS) system immediately locates your vehicle and puts you in contact with the appropriate emergency services\*\*.

- ▶ Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

The indicator lamp flashes while the vehicle data is being sent, and then remains lit when communication is established.

**!** In the event that a serious accident is detected by the sensors built into the vehicle, such as the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically.

**i** The eCall (SOS) system is a public service of general interest and is free-of-charge.

### System operation

- Upon switching on the ignition, if the indicator lamp lights up red, then green, and then goes out: the system is operating correctly.

\* In accordance with the general conditions of use of the service, available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

\*\* Depending on the geographic coverage provided by the "eCall (SOS)" and "ASSISTANCE" systems.

The list of countries covered and the telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

- If the indicator lamp is fixed red: system malfunction
  - If the indicator lamp flashes red: replace the emergency battery.
- In the latter two cases, emergency and assistance call services may not work. Contact a dealer or a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

**i** The system fault does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

### **i** Data processing

All processing of personal information by the "Localised Emergency Call" system (PE112) complies with the framework for protection of personal information established by Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR) and Directive 2002/58/EC of the European Parliament and the Council, and in particular, seeks to protect the vital interests of the data subject, in accordance with Article 6.1, paragraph d) of Regulation 2016/679. Personal information processing is strictly limited to the management of the "Localised Emergency Call" system used with the "112" European single emergency call number. The "Localised Emergency Call" system is able to collect and process only the following

data relating to the vehicle: chassis number, type (passenger vehicle or light commercial vehicle), fuel type or power source, most recent three locations and direction of travel, and a timestamped log file recording the automatic activation of the system. The recipients of the processed data are the emergency call handling centres designated by the relevant national authorities in the territory in which they are located, enabling priority reception and handling of calls to the "112" emergency number.

### **i** Data storage

Data contained in the system's memory is not accessible from outside the system until a call is made. The system is not traceable and is not continuously monitored in its normal operating mode. The data in the system's internal memory is automatically and continuously erased. Only the vehicle's three most recent locations are stored. When an emergency call is triggered, the data log is stored for no more than 13 hours.

### **i** Access to data

You have the right to access the data and, if necessary, submit a request to rectify, erase or restrict the processing of any personal information not processed in accordance with the provisions of Regulation 2016/679 (GDPR). Third parties to which data has been communicated shall be notified of any rectification, erasure or restriction carried out in accordance with the aforementioned Directive, unless doing so would be impossible or require a disproportionate effort. You also have the right to lodge a complaint with the relevant data protection authority.

## ASSISTANCE

- ▶ If the vehicle breaks down, press button **2** for more than 2 seconds to request assistance (confirmed by a voice message\*).
- ▶ Pressing again immediately cancels the request.

**i** Privacy mode allows you to manage the level of sharing (data and/or position) between your vehicle and the CITROËN brand. It can be configured in the **Settings** menu on the touch screen.

\* Depending on the geographic coverage of the "eCall (SOS)" and "ASSISTANCE" systems and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle.

The list of countries covered and the telematic services provided is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

By default, depending on equipment, deactivate/reactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the 2 buttons, then press the "Localised Assistance Call" button to confirm.

**i** If you purchased your vehicle outside the CITROËN dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify them to suit your wishes. In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

**i** For technical reasons, in particular to improve the quality of telematic services for customers, the Manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system at any time.

**i** If you benefit from the Citroën Connect Box offer with the SOS and Assistance Pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country. For information about the SOS and Assistance Pack, please refer to the general conditions for these services.

## Electronic stability control (ESC)

The electronic stability control programme includes the following systems:

- Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD).
- Emergency braking assistance (EBA).
- Anti-slip regulation (ASR).
- Dynamic stability control (DSC).
- Intelligent traction control.
- Trailer stability assist (TSA).

## Anti-lock braking system (ABS)/Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

These systems enhance the vehicle's stability and handling during braking, and enable greater control while cornering, particularly on poor or slippery road surfaces.

ABS prevents wheel locking in the event of emergency braking.

Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) manages overall braking pressure on each individual wheel.

► **When braking in an emergency, depress the pedal very firmly and maintain this pressure.**

**i** Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibrations of the brake pedal.



The fixed illumination of this warning lamp signals that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at a moderate speed. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



This warning lamp, when lit together with the **STOP** and ABS warning lamps, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, indicates an EBFD malfunction.

**You must stop the vehicle.**

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.



**After an impact**

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

This system reduces the emergency stopping distance, by optimising the braking pressure.

It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is depressed. The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

## Anti-slip regulation (ASR) / Dynamic stability control (DSC)

Anti-slip regulation (or traction control) optimises traction by using engine braking and by applying the brakes on the driving wheels to avoid one or more wheels spinning. It also enhances the vehicle's directional stability.

If there is a difference between the vehicle's trajectory and the path desired by the driver, the dynamic stability control system automatically uses engine braking and the brakes on one or more wheels to return the vehicle to the desired path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.



These systems are activated in the event of a problem with grip or trajectory (confirmed by this warning lamp flashing on the instrument panel).

### Deactivation/Reactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, etc.), it may be advisable to deactivate these systems, so that the wheels can turn freely and regain grip.

Deactivation is possible up to 19 mph (30 km/h). Reactivate the systems as soon as the level of grip permits.



The settings are changed via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.



Deactivation is confirmed by the lighting of this indicator lamp on the instrument panel and the display of a message. These systems are reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched off, or at speeds over 31 mph (50 km/h). Reactivation is manual below 31 mph (50 km/h).

### Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp comes on on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### ! ASR/DSC

These systems enhance safety during normal driving, but should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.

Correct operation of these systems depends on compliance with the manufacturer's recommendations relating to the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components, as well as the assembly and repair procedures provided by CITROËN dealers.

In order to ensure that these systems remain effective in wintry conditions, the use of snow or all-season tyres is recommended. All four wheels must be fitted with tyres approved for your vehicle.

All tyre specifications are listed on the tyre/paint label. For more information on **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Intelligent traction control ("Snow motion")

(Depending on version)

The intelligent traction control system helps improve grip when driving on snow.

This system detects situations of poor surface grip that could make it difficult to move off or make progress on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.

In these situations, the system limits the amount of wheel spin to provide the best traction and trajectory control for the vehicle.



The use of winter tyres is strongly recommended on slippery surfaces.

## Trailer stability assist (TSA)

When towing, this system reduces the risk of the vehicle or trailer snaking.

## Operation

The system is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

The electronic stability control system (ESC) must not have any faults.

The vehicle speed must be between 37 and 99 mph (60 and 160 km/h).



If the system detects that the trailer is snaking, it applies the brakes to stabilise the trailer and reduces engine power, if necessary, to slow the vehicle (indicated by the flashing of this warning lamp on the instrument panel and the brake lamps coming on).

For information on weights and towed loads, refer to the **Engine technical data and towed loads** section or your vehicle's registration certificate.

To ensure safe driving with a **Towing device**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Malfunction



If a fault occurs, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

To continue towing a trailer, reduce speed and drive carefully!

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



The trailer stability control system provides an extra safety feature under normal driving conditions, when following the recommendations for use of trailers and

current legislation in force in your country. It must not encourage the driver to take extra risks, such as using a trailer in unsuitable conditions of operation (e.g. excessive load, exceeded nose weight, worn or under-inflated tyres, faulty braking system) or driving at excessive speed.

In certain cases, the system may not detect trailer snaking, particularly with a light trailer. When driving on slippery or poor surfaces, the system may not be able to prevent sudden trailer snaking.

## Advanced Grip Control

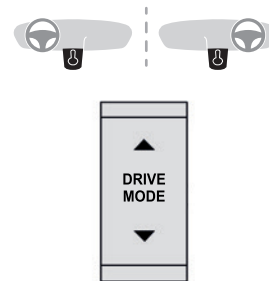
This special patented traction control system improves grip on snow, mud and sand.



For optimum grip on snow, it is recommended that you fit the vehicle with winter tyres.

For optimum system performance, contact a CITROËN dealer to choose the most suitable tyres.

## Activation/Deactivation



- ▶ Press the **DRIVE MODE** button; the various modes are displayed on the instrument panel.
- ▶ Select "**Snow**", "**Mud**" or "**Sand**" depending on the context.

The chosen mode continues to be displayed in the instrument panel.

- ▶ To deactivate, select "**Normal**" mode or any other driving mode.

The system is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched off.

## Operating modes

### Snow

This mode constantly adapts the level of wheel spin to offer maximum traction according to the snow conditions (a lot of wheel spin in thick snow; very little on ice). The wheel spin is also adapted to the conditions encountered when



driving uphill by optimising the acceleration of the vehicle.

(mode active up to 50 mph (80 km/h))

### Mud

This mode, when moving off, allows considerable spin on the wheel with the least grip to optimise clearing of the mud and to regain grip. At the same time, the wheel with the most grip is controlled in such a way as to transmit as much traction torque as possible.

When moving, the system optimises wheel spin to respond to the driver's requirements as fully as possible.

(mode active up to 31 mph (50 km/h))

### Sand

This mode allows little spin on the two driving wheels at the same time to allow the vehicle to move forward and limit the risks of getting stuck in the sand.

(mode active up to 75 mph (120 km/h))

**!** Do not use the other modes on sand as the vehicle may become stuck.

### Recommendations

The vehicle is designed principally to drive on tarmac roads, but it may occasionally drive on other less passable terrain.

However, it does not permit off-road driving:

- Driving on terrain that can damage the underbody or tear off elements (e.g. fuel

pipe, fuel cooler) by obstacles or stones in particular.

- Driving on terrain with steep gradients and poor grip.
- Crossing a waterway.

## Hill Assist Descent Control

Hill Assist Descent Control system for medium to steep slopes, on tarmac or other road surfaces (e.g. gravel, mud).

This system reduces the risk of slip or loss of control of the vehicle when descending, whether going forward or in reverse.

During a descent, the system assists the driver in maintaining a constant speed, depending on the gear engaged, while progressively releasing the brakes.

**i** For the system to activate, the gradient must be greater than 5%.

The system can be used with the gearbox in neutral.

Otherwise, engage a gear corresponding to the speed to prevent the engine stalling.

With an automatic gearbox, the system can be used with the selector at **N**, **D** or **R**.

**!** When the system is regulating, the Active Safety Brake system is automatically deactivated.

**i** The system is no longer available if the speed of the vehicle is:

- above 43 mph (70 km/h).
- managed by the Adaptive cruise control, depending on the type of gearbox.

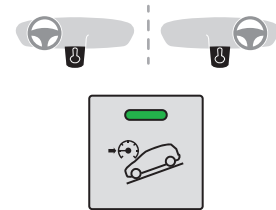
## Operation

### Switching on

By default, the system is not selected.

The state of the function is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

The driver can select the system when the engine is running, when the vehicle is stationary or when moving at speeds up to approximately 31 mph (50 km/h).



### With instrument panels with dials



▶ To select the system, at speeds below 31 mph (50 km/h), press this button until its indicator lights up; this lamp appears in green in the instrument panel.

The system becomes active at speeds below 19 mph (30 km/h).

### With digital instrument panel



▶ To select the system, at speeds below 31 mph (50 km/h), press this button until its green indicator lamp comes on; this lamp appears in grey in the instrument panel.



▶ The system becomes active at speeds below 19 mph (30 km/h); this indicator lamp comes on in green in the instrument panel.

▶ When the vehicle begins its descent, you can release the accelerator and brake pedals; the system regulates the speed:



– if the gearbox is in first or second gear, the speed decreases and the indicator lamp flashes rapidly,

– if the gearbox is in neutral or if the clutch pedal is depressed, the speed decreases and the indicator lamp flashes slowly; in this case, the maintained descent speed is lower.

On a descent, with the vehicle stationary, if you release the accelerator and brake pedals, the system will release the brakes to set the vehicle gradually in motion.

The brake lamps light up automatically when the system is regulating.

If the speed exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h), regulation is paused automatically, the indicator lamp goes back to grey in the instrument panel, but the green indicator lamp in the button remains on.

Regulation resumes automatically when the speed falls below 19 mph (30 km/h) again, if the slope and pedal release conditions are met.

You can depress the accelerator or brake pedal again at any time.

### Switching off

▶ Press the button until its indicator lamp goes off; the indicator lamp on the instrument panel goes off.

At speeds above 43 mph (70 km/h), the system is automatically deactivated; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

### Malfunction

In the event of a malfunction, a message is displayed on the instrument panel.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Seat belts

#### Inertia reel

The seat belts are equipped with an inertia reel which allows the strap length to adjust automatically to the shape of the user. The seat belt returns to its storage automatically when it is not used.

The inertia reels are fitted with a device which automatically locks the strap in the event of a collision, emergency braking or if the vehicle rolls over. It can be released by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.

#### Pyrotechnic pretensioning

This system improves safety in the event of a frontal or side impact.

Depending on the severity of the impact, the pyrotechnic pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.

The pyrotechnic pretensioning seat belts are enabled when the ignition is on.

#### Force limiting system

This system reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.

#### ! In the event of an impact

Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impacts, the pyrotechnic device may trigger before and independently of airbag deployment. Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.

In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.

Following an impact, have the seat belt system checked, and if necessary replaced, by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Front seat belts

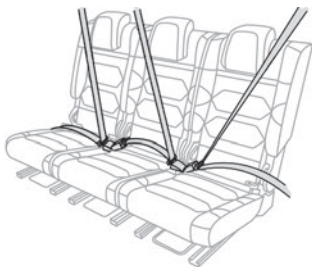
The front seat belts are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning system and a force limiting system.

## Height adjustment



- ▶ To adjust the height of the anchorage point, squeeze control **A** and slide it to the notch desired.

## Rear seat belts



- Each of the rear seats has a three-point seat belt with inertia reel.
- The outer seats are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning and force limiting system.

## Fastening

- ▶ Pull the strap, then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ▶ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

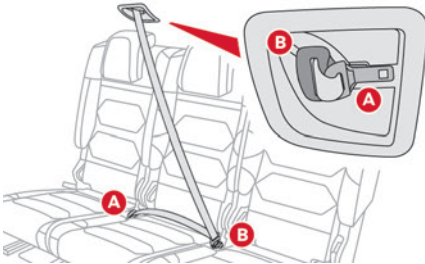
## Unfastening

- ▶ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ▶ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.
- ▶ On the side seat belts, raise the bar to the top of the backrest to prevent the tongue from knocking against the side trim.

## Rear central seat belt

The seat belt for the rear central seat is integrated into the roof.

### Installation



- ▶ Pull the strap and insert the tongue **A** into the left buckle (located on the passenger's right side when seated in the vehicle).

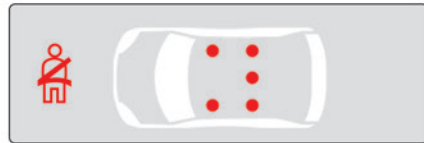
- ▶ Insert the tongue **B** into the right buckle (located on the passenger's left side when seated in the vehicle).
- ▶ Check that each buckle is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

## Removal and storage

- ▶ Press the red button on buckle **B**, then the black button on buckle **A**.
- ▶ Guide the strap as it reels in and offer up tongue **B**, then **A** to the magnet at the anchoring point on the roof.

**!** Before performing any operations on the rear seats, to avoid damage to the seat belts, check that the outer seat belts are properly tensioned and attach the tongues to their anchorage points. The central seat belt must be completely reeled in.

## Seat belt not fastened/unfastened alerts



Not fastened/unfastened warning lamp

It comes on in red on both the instrument panel and the front passenger airbag and seat belts warning lamps display, once the system detects that a seat belt is not fastened or has been unfastened.

#### **Seat belts not fastened/unfastened identification indicator lamp**

The red indicator lamps on the display indicate the location of the seat belts which are not fastened or have been unfastened.

#### **Not fastened at the front**

When the ignition is switched on, the warning lamp and the corresponding indicator lamps light up if the driver and/or the front passenger have not fastened their seat belts.

At a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h), these warning lamps flash, accompanied by an increasing audible signal for approximately two minutes. After two minutes, these warning lamps remain on as long as the front seatbelts are not fastened.

#### **Not fastened at the rear**

When the ignition is switched on and with the engine running or the vehicle moving at a speed below 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning lamp and the corresponding indicator lamps light up for 1 minute, if one or more rear seat belts are not fastened.

#### **Unfastened**

After the ignition is switched on, the warning lamp and the corresponding indicator lamps light

up if the driver and/or one or more passengers unfasten their seat belts.

At a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h), these warning lamps flash, accompanied by an audible signal for approximately two minutes. After this time, these warning lamps remain on as long as the seatbelts are not refastened.

## **Advice**

**!** The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before setting off.

Wherever seated in the vehicle, you must always fasten the seat belt, even for short journeys.

Do not invert the seat belt buckles, as they will not fulfil their role properly.

To ensure the proper functioning of the belt buckles, make sure that there are no foreign bodies present (e.g. a coin) before fastening. Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.

After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

#### **!** Installation

The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible over the pelvis. The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.

At the front, adjusting the position of the seat belt may require the seat height to be adjusted.

In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible.
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it is not twisted.
- must only be used to secure one person.
- not show signs of tearing or fraying.
- not be changed or modified, in order to avoid affecting its performance.

#### **!** Recommendations for children

Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than 1.5 metres.

Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.

Never carry a child on your lap.

For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

#### **!** Maintenance

In accordance with current safety regulations, for all work on your vehicle's seat belts, contact a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a CITROËN dealer is able to provide. Have the seat belts checked regularly by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop,

particularly if the straps show signs of damage.

Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by CITROËN dealers.

## Airbags

### General information

This system is designed to improve the safety of the occupants of the front seats and the rear outer seats in the event of a violent collision. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts equipped with a force limiting system. Electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

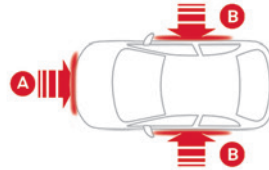
- In the event of violent impact, the airbags deploy instantly and help better protect the occupants of the vehicle; immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly in order not to hinder the visibility or the possible exit of the occupants.
- In the event of a slight impact, a rear impact and under certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not deploy; only the seat belt helps to protect you in these situations.

The seriousness of the impact depends on the nature of the obstacle and the speed of the vehicle at the moment of collision.

**!** The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.

This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

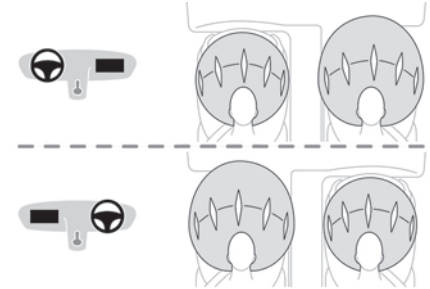
### Impact detection zones



- A.** Front impact zone
- B.** Side impact zone

**i** When one or more airbags are deployed, the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system makes a noise and releases a small quantity of smoke. This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience irritation. The detonation noise associated with the deployment of one or more airbags may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

## Front airbags



System that protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact, limiting the risk of head and chest injury. The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

**i** The front airbags are adaptive. In particular, they inflate less firmly in the presence of a smaller occupant, with the seat set in a forward longitudinal position.

### Deployment

They deploy, except the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated\*, in the event of a serious front impact to all or part of the front impact zone **A**. The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the

\* For more information on Deactivating the front passenger airbag, refer to the corresponding section.

steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

## Lateral airbags

### At the front



This system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact, limiting the risk of injury to the chest, between the hip and the shoulder.

Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, on the door side.

### Deployment

The lateral airbags are deployed on one side in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**.

The lateral airbag inflates between the hip and shoulder of the vehicle's occupant and the corresponding door panel.

## Curtain airbags

System contributing towards greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.

Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

### Deployment

It deploys simultaneously with the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**.

The curtain airbag inflates between the front and rear occupants of the vehicle and the corresponding windows.

## Malfunction



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The airbags may not be deployed in the event of a serious impact.



In the event of a minor impact or bump at the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed. In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

## Advice

**!** For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.

Adopt a normal and upright sitting position.

Fasten your seat belt and position it correctly.

Do not place anything between the occupants and the airbags (e.g. child, animal, object), do not fix or attach anything near or in the path of the airbags, as this could cause injuries when they are deployed.

Never modify the original definition of the vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.

Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms cannot be ruled out when an airbag is deployed. The bag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time, discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen, have the airbag systems checked.

All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop

### **!** Front airbags

Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.

Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.

Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.

Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.

Do not fix or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, as this could cause injuries when the airbags are deployed.

### ! Lateral airbags

Use only approved seat covers compatible with the deployment of these airbags. For information on the range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer.

Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (e.g. clothing) as this could cause injuries to the chest or arm when the airbag is deployed.

Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.

The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.

A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors - risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!

All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop

### ! Curtain airbags

Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.

Do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof.

## Child seats

i The legislation on carrying children is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
- **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
- **A child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the "rearward facing" position both in the front and in the rear.**

i **It is recommended** that children travel on the **rear seats** of the vehicle:

- **"rearward facing"** up to the age of 3,
- **"forward facing"** over the age of 3.

! Make sure that the seat belt is correctly positioned and tightened.

For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.

! An incorrectly installed child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident.

Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.

Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harness keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.

When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the vehicle seat. If the passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.

**Remove the head restraint before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.**

Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

**! Children at the rear**

A child seat with ISOFIX or i-Size mountings must never be installed on the centre rear passenger seat.

**! Installing a booster seat**

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs. Use a booster seat with a backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

**! Additional protections**

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the "Child lock". Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the sun's rays, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

As a safety measure, do not leave:

- A child alone and unsupervised inside a vehicle.
- A child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed.
- The keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

## Child seat at the rear

### Forward-facing or rearward-facing



- ▶ Move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the forward-facing or rearward-facing child seat itself do not touch the vehicle's front seat.
- ▶ Check that the backrest of the forward-facing child seat is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle's rear seat, and ideally in contact with it.

### Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

## Child seat at the front



- ▶ Adjust the front passenger seat to the **highest and fully back longitudinal position, with the backrest straightened.**

### "Forward facing"



- !** You must leave the front passenger airbag active.

### "Rearward facing"

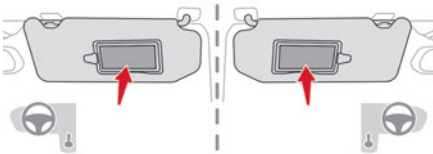




**!** The front passenger airbag must be deactivated before installing a rearward facing child seat. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed if the airbag is deployed.**



Warning label - Front passenger airbag



You must comply with the following instruction, as reminded by the warning label on both sides of the passenger sun visor:

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

## Deactivating the front passenger airbag



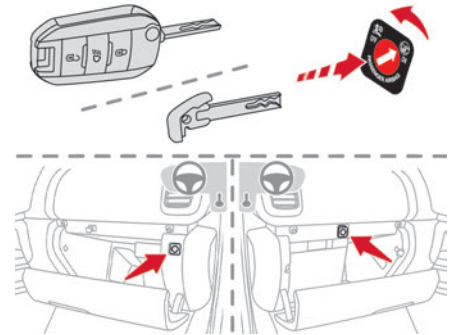
### Passenger airbag OFF

**!** To ensure the safety of the child, the front passenger airbag **MUST** be deactivated when a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat. Otherwise, the child risks being seriously injured or killed in the event of deployment of the airbag.

**!** **Vehicles not equipped with a deactivation/reactivation control**  
Installing a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat is strictly prohibited - risk of death or serious injury in the event of airbag deployment!

## Deactivating/Reactivating the front passenger airbag

For vehicles on which it is fitted, the switch is located inside the glove box.



### With the ignition off:

- ▶ To deactivate the airbag, turn the key in the switch to the "OFF" position.
- ▶ To reactivate it, turn the key to the "ON" position.

When the ignition is switched on:



This warning lamp comes on and remains lit to signal deactivation.

Or




This warning lamp comes on for about 1 minute to signal activation.

## Recommended child seats


Range of child seats secured using a **three-point seat belt**.

**Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg**



**L1**  
"RÖMER Baby-Safe"  
Installed in the "rearward facing" position.

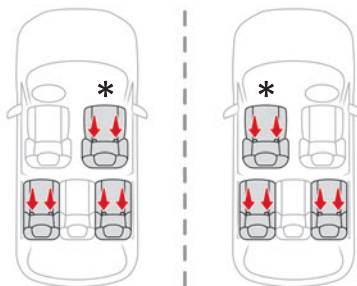
**Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg**



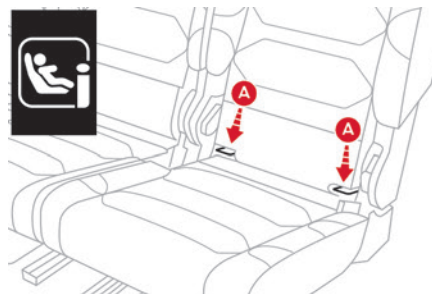
**L5**  
"RÖMER KIDFIX 2R"  
Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.  
The child is restrained by the seat belt.  
A version with a removable backrest may be used for children weighing more than 25 kg. However, for better protection, use a booster seat with backrest for all children weighing up to 36 kg.

## "ISOFIX" mountings

The seats shown below are fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings:

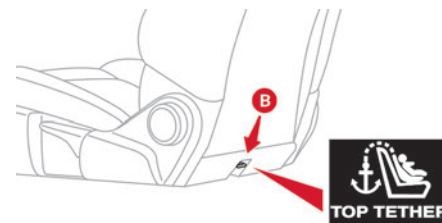


\* Depending on country of sale.  
The mountings comprise three rings for each seat, indicated by a marking:  
– Two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion.

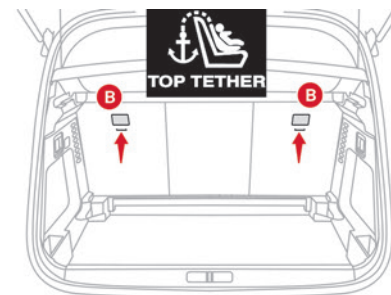


The 2 latches on **ISOFIX child seats** are secured to them.

– One ring **B**, located behind the seat, called the **TOP TETHER**, for attaching seats fitted with an upper strap.



Front seat



Rear seats

This system prevents the child seat from tipping forwards in the event of a front impact.

This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in the vehicle.

To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:

► Remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on this seat (refit it once the child seat has been removed).

- ▶ Pass the strap of the child seat behind the seat backrest, centring it between the openings for the head restraint rods.
- ▶ Secure the upper strap hook to ring **B**.
- ▶ Tighten the upper strap.

**i** When fitting an ISOFIX child seat to the left-hand rear seat of the bench seat, before fitting the seat, first move the centre rear seat belt towards the middle of the vehicle, so as to avoid the seat interfering with the operation of the seat belt.

**!** An incorrectly installed child seat in a vehicle compromises the child's safety in the event of an accident. Strictly observe the fitting instructions provided in the user guide supplied with the child seat.

**i** For information about the options for fitting ISOFIX child seats in your vehicle, refer to the summary table.

## Recommended ISOFIX child seats

**i** Also consult the user guide from the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

### "RÖMER Baby-Safe and its ISOFIX base" (size category: **E**)

**Group 0+:** from birth to 13 kg



Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**. Only suitable for installation on the front passenger seat or the outer rear seats. The base has a support leg, height-adjustable, which rests on the vehicle's floor. This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.

### "RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX" (size category: **B1**)

**Group 1:** from 9 to 18 kg



### "RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX" (size category: **B1**)

**Group 1:** from 9 to 18 kg

Suitable for forward-facing installation only. Attached to rings **A** and ring **B**, referred to as TOP TETHER, using an upper strap.

Only suitable for installation on the front passenger seat or the outer rear seats. The head restraint on the rear side seat must be raised to the maximum.

Three seat body angles: sitting, reclining, lying down.

This child seat can also be used in seat positions not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle's seat by the three-point seat belt. Adjust the front seat of the vehicle so that the child's feet do not touch the backrest.

## i-Size child seats

i-Size child seats have two latches that are anchored to the two rings **A**.

These i-Size child seats also have:



- either an upper strap that is attached to ring **B**.
- or a support leg that rests on the vehicle floor, compatible with the approved i-Size seat position.

Their role is to prevent the child seat from tipping forward in the event of a collision.

For more information on the **ISOFIX mountings**, refer to the corresponding section.

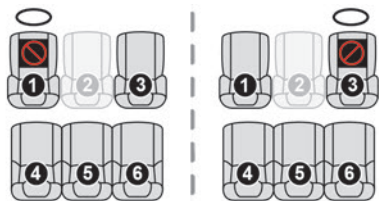
## Installing universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats

In compliance with European regulations, this table indicates the possibilities for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved (a) as well as the largest ISOFIX and i-Size child seats for the seat positions fitted with ISOFIX anchorage points in the vehicle.

	Seat numbers					
	Front seats			Rear seats		
	1	3		4	5	6
	3	1		4	5	6
Front passenger airbag	-	Deactivated "OFF" (b)	Activated "ON" (c)	-	-	-
Position compatible with a <b>universal (a)</b> child seat	no	yes (e) (h)	yes (e) (i)	yes	yes (f)	yes
Position compatible with an <b>i-Size</b> child seat	no	yes (j) / no (k)		yes	no	yes
Position equipped with a <b>TOP TETHER</b> hook	no	yes (j) / no (k)		yes	no	yes
"Carrycot" type child seat	no	no		no	no	no
"Rearward facing" <b>ISOFIX</b> child seat	no	R3 (d) (j) / no (k)	no	R2	no	R2
"Forward facing" <b>ISOFIX</b> child seat	no	F3 (d) (j) / no (k)		F3	no	F3
Booster child seat	no	B3 (g)		B3	B3	B3

## Rules:

- A position that is **i-Size** compatible is also compatible with **R1, R2** and **F2X, F2, B2**.
  - A position that is **R3** compatible is also compatible with **R1** and **R2**.
  - A position that is **R2** compatible is also compatible with **R1**.
  - A position that is **F3** compatible is also compatible with **F2X** and **F2**.
  - A position that is **B3** compatible is also compatible with **B2**.
- (a) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.
  - (b) To install a "**rearward facing**" child seat at this seat position, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated ("**OFF**").
  - (c) Only a "**forward facing**" child seat is authorised at this seat position with the front passenger airbag activated ("**ON**").
  - (d) Tilt the seat backrest to 45°, then install the child seat.  
Straighten the backrest until it contacts the child seat's backrest.
  - (e) For a seat with height adjustment, set it to the maximum height.
  - (f) A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the centre rear passenger seat.
  - (g) The vehicle seat must be as far back as possible.
  - (h) For a "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" universal child seat (U) in groups 0, 0+, 1, 2 or 3.
  - (i) For a "forward facing" universal child seat (UF) in groups 1, 2 or 3.
  - (j) Seat fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings.
  - (k) Seat not fitted with ISOFIX compliant mountings.




**Key**

Seat position where the installation of a child seat is forbidden.

Front passenger airbag **deactivated**.

Front passenger airbag **activated**.

Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing" (U)** for all sizes and weight groups.

Seat position suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and **universally approved "forward facing" (UF)** for groups 1, 2 & 3 only.

Seat position authorised for the installation of an **i-Size** child seat.

Seat position not suitable for the installation of a child seat with support leg.

Seat position authorised for the installation of a **"forward facing" i-Size** child seat.

Presence of a **Top Tether** anchorage point at the rear of the backrest, authorising the installation of a **universal ISOFIX child seat**.

Presence of a **Top Tether** anchorage point at the rear of the backrest, authorising the installation of a **"forward facing" universal ISOFIX child seat**.

"Rearward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **R1: ISOFIX** child seat for a **baby**.
- **R2: ISOFIX reduced size** child seat.
- **R3: ISOFIX large size** child seat.

"Forward facing" **ISOFIX** child seat:

- **F2X: ISOFIX** child seat for **toddlers**.
- **F2: ISOFIX reduced height** child seat.
- **F3: ISOFIX full height** child seat.

**Booster** child seat:

- **B2: reduced width booster** seat.
- **B3: full width booster** seat.

Seat position authorised for the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat.

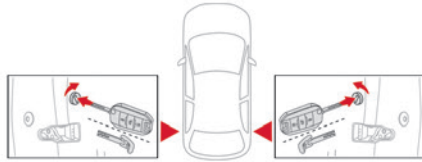
Seat position where the installation of an **ISOFIX** child seat is forbidden.

For seat adjustments, refer to the table **"Installing universal, ISOFIX and i-Size child seats"**.

## Manual child lock

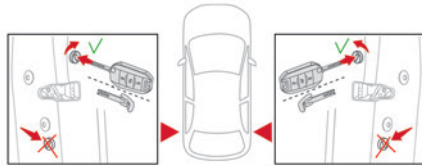
The system prevents a rear door from being opened using its interior handle. The red control is located on the edge of each rear door (marked by a label).

## Activation/Deactivation



- ▶ To activate the child lock, turn the built-in key in the **red** control as far as possible:
  - To the right on the left-hand rear door.
  - To the left on the right-hand rear door.
- ▶ To deactivate the child lock, turn the key in the opposite direction.

**!** Do not confuse the child lock control, which is red, with the back-up locking control, which is black.



## Electric child lock



This control prevents the opening of the rear doors using their interior handles.

## Activation/Deactivation



- ▶ With the ignition on, press this button to activate/deactivate the child lock. A message is displayed, confirming activation/deactivation of the child lock. When the indicator lamp is on, the child lock is activated.

**i** With the child lock activated, it is still possible to open the doors from outside.

**!** This system is independent and in no circumstances does it take the place of the central locking control. Check the status of the child lock each time you switch on the ignition. Always keep the electronic key with you when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time. In the event of a serious impact, the electric child lock is switched off automatically to permit the exit of the rear passengers.

## Driving recommendations

- ▶ Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
- ▶ Monitor your environment and keep your hands on the wheel to be able to react to anything that may happen any time.
- ▶ Drive smoothly, anticipate the need for braking and maintain a longer safety distance, especially in bad weather.
- ▶ Stop the vehicle to carry out operations that require close attention (such as adjustments).
- ▶ During long trips, take a break every two hours.

### Important!

**!** **Never leave the engine running in a closed space without sufficient ventilation.** Internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases such as carbon monoxide. Danger of poisoning and death!

**!** In very severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), let the engine run for 4 minutes before moving off, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the mechanical components of your vehicle (engine and gearbox).

**!** **Never drive with the parking brake applied.** Risk of overheating and damaging the braking system!

**!** **Never park the vehicle and never leave the engine running on a flammable surface (e.g. dry grass, dead leaves).** The vehicle exhaust system is very hot, even several minutes after the engine stops. Risk of fire!

**!** **Never drive on surfaces covered with vegetation (e.g. tall grass, accumulated dead leaves, crops, debris) such as a field, a country lane overgrown with bushes or a grassy verge.** This vegetation could come into contact with the vehicle's exhaust system or other systems which are very hot. Risk of fire!

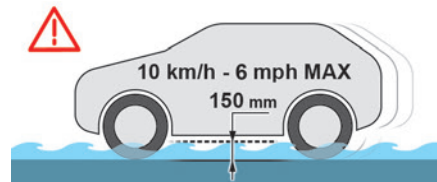
**!** Make sure you do not leave any item in the passenger compartment which could act like a magnifying glass under the effect of the sun's rays and cause a fire. Risk of fire or damage to interior surfaces!

**!** **Never leave the vehicle unattended, with the engine running.** If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P** (depending on the type of gearbox).

**!** **Never leave children inside the vehicle unsupervised.**

## On flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the internal combustion engine or electric motor, the gearbox and the electrical systems of the vehicle.



If the vehicle absolutely must drive through a flooded section of road:

- ▶ Check that the depth of the water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users.
  - ▶ Deactivate the Stop & Start function.
  - ▶ Drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h).
  - ▶ Do not stop and do not switch off the engine.
- On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads. If in doubt about the state of your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



## Towing

**!** Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and particular care must be taken.

**i** Do not exceed the maximum towable weights.

**At altitude:** reduce the maximum load by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude; the lower air density at high altitudes decreases engine performance.

**!** **New vehicle:** do not tow a trailer until the vehicle has driven at least 620 miles (1,000 kilometres).

**i** If the outside temperature is high, let the engine idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to help it to cool.

### Before setting off

#### Nose weight

► Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are located as close as possible to the axle, and the nose weight (at the point where it joins your vehicle) approaches the maximum permitted, without exceeding it.

### Tyres

► Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

### Lighting

► Check the electrical signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

**i** If a genuine CITROËN towing device is used, the rear parking sensors will be deactivated automatically to avoid activating the audible signal.

### When driving

#### Cooling

Towing a trailer uphill causes the coolant temperature to increase. The maximum towable load depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature. The fan's cooling capacity does not increase with engine speed.

► Reduce speed and lower the engine speed to limit the amount of heating produced.

► Pay constant attention to the coolant temperature.



If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

### Brakes

Using the engine brake is recommended to limit the overheating of the brakes. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.

### Side wind

Bear in mind that the vehicle will be more susceptible to wind when towing.

## Anti-theft protection

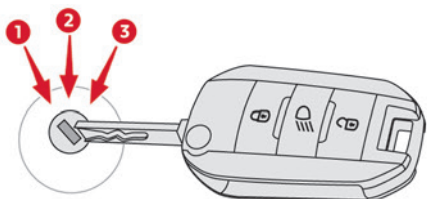
### Electronic immobiliser

The keys contain a code, which must be recognised by the vehicle before starting is possible.

If the system malfunctions, indicated by the display of a message, the engine will not start. Contact a CITROËN dealer.

## Starting / Switching off the engine with the key

### Key ignition switch



It has 3 positions:

- **1. Stop:** inserting and removing the key, steering column locked.
- **2. Ignition:** steering column unlocked, ignition on, Diesel preheating, engine running.
- **3. Starting.**

**i** Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control. It would weigh down on its shaft in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

### Ignition on position

It allows the use of the vehicle's electric equipment or the charging of accessories. Once the state of charge of the battery drops to the reserve level, the system switches to energy economy mode: the power supply is cut off

automatically to preserve the remaining battery charge.

### Starting the engine

With the parking brake applied:

- ▶ With a **manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- ▶ With an **automatic gearbox**, place the gear selector in mode **N** or **P** then depress the brake pedal.
- ▶ Insert the key into the ignition switch; the system recognises the code.
- ▶ Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering wheel and the key.

**i** In certain cases, you may need to apply significant force to move the steering wheel (e.g. wheels turned to full lock).

- ▶ With a **petrol engine**, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine has started, release the key and allow it to return to position **2**.

**i** **Petrol engines**  
After a cold start, preheating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations, for anything up to 2 minutes (accelerated idle speed).

- ▶ With a **Diesel engine**, turn the key to position **2**, to activate the engine preheating system.

**oo** Wait until this warning lamp goes off on the instrument panel, then turn the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, to operate the starter motor. Once the engine has started, release the key and allow it to return to position **2**.

**i** In wintry conditions, the warning lamp may stay on for a longer period. When the engine is hot, the warning lamp does not come on.  
In mild conditions, do not leave the engine to warm up while stationary, but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

**!** If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition. Wait a few seconds before operating the starter motor again. If the engine does not start after a few attempts, do not keep trying - risk of damaging the starter motor and the engine! Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Switching off the engine

- ▶ Immobilise the vehicle.
- ▶ With the engine at idle, turn the key to position **1**.
- ▶ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
- ▶ To lock the steering column, turn the steering wheel until it locks.

**i** To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, it is recommended that the wheels be returned to the straight ahead position before switching off the engine.

**!** Never switch off the ignition before the complete immobilisation of the vehicle. With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off - risk of loss of control of the vehicle!

**i** Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground. When leaving the vehicle, keep the key in your possession and lock the vehicle.

### Energy economy mode

After the engine has stopped (position 1. **Stop**), for a maximum combined duration of 30 minutes, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, courtesy lamps or dipped beam headlamps.

**i** For more information on **Energy economy mode**, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** **Key left in**  
When the driver's door is opened, a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, if the key has been left in the ignition switch in position 1.

If the key has been left in the ignition switch in position 2, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour. To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position 1, then back to position 2.

## Starting/Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry and Start

**i** The electronic key must be present in the passenger compartment. If the electronic key is not detected, a message is displayed. Move the electronic key so that the engine can be started or switched off. If there is still a problem, refer to the "Key not detected - Back-up starting or Back-up switch-off" section.


## Starting



- ▶ With a **manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral and fully depress the clutch pedal.
- ▶ With an **automatic gearbox**, select mode **P** or **N** and depress the brake pedal.
- ▶ Press the "**START/STOP**" button while maintaining pressure on the pedal until the engine starts.

### Diesel engines

In negative temperatures and/or when the engine is cold, starting takes place only after the preheating warning lamp goes out.

 If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the "**START/STOP**" button:

- ▶ Keep the pedal fully depressed and do not press the "**START/STOP**" button again until the engine is running.

In all circumstances, if one of the starting conditions is not met, a message is displayed. In some circumstances, a message indicates that it is necessary to turn the steering wheel

while pressing the "START/STOP" button to assist unlocking of the steering column.

### **i** Petrol engines

With Petrol engines, after a cold start, pre-heating the catalytic converter can cause noticeable engine vibrations, for anything up to 2 minutes (accelerated idle speed).

**i** If the engine stalls, release the clutch pedal and fully depress it again, the engine will restart automatically.

## Starting rechargeable hybrid vehicles

► Fully depress the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button for approximately 2 seconds.

**READY**

► Keep your foot on the pedal until this indicator lamp comes on, indicating the activation of the rechargeable hybrid system (confirmed by an audible signal).

**!** To exit Park mode, wait for the **READY** indicator lamp to come on.

By default, the system starts in **Electric** mode. Depending on certain parameters (battery charge level or outside temperature), the system determines whether it is necessary to start the petrol engine.

It is possible to change the driving mode at any time using the mode selector.

**!** When the vehicle starts in electric mode, it makes no noise.

Pay particular attention to pedestrians and cyclists who may not hear the vehicle coming despite the pedestrian horn.

## Switching off

- Immobilise the vehicle using the parking brake.
- With a **manual gearbox**, ideally put the gear lever into neutral.
- With an **automatic gearbox**, ideally select mode **P** or **N**.

► Press the "**START/STOP**" button.

► For rechargeable hybrid vehicles, before leaving the vehicle, check that the **READY** indicator lamp is switched off.

In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel to lock the steering column. On certain versions with an automatic gearbox (EAT6/EAT8), the steering column does not lock, but the gearbox locks in mode **P**.

**i** If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

**!** With the engine off, the braking and steering assistance systems are also cut off - risk of loss of control of the vehicle!

**!** Never leave your vehicle with the electronic key still inside.

## Switching on the ignition without starting the engine



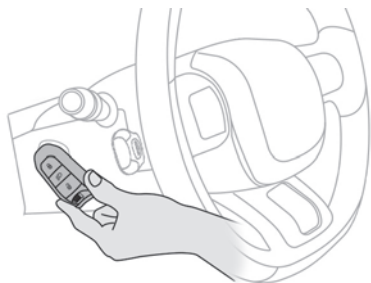
With the electronic key in the passenger compartment, pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, **without depressing any of the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on without starting the engine (the instrument panel and accessories such as the audio system and the lighting will come on).

► Press this button again to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

## Key not detected

### Back-up starting

A back-up reader is fitted to the steering column, to enable the engine to be started if the system fails to detect the key in the recognition zone, or if the battery in the electronic key is flat.



- ▶ Place and hold the remote control against the back-up reader.
- ▶ **With a manual gearbox**, place the gear lever in neutral, then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- ▶ **With an automatic gearbox**, select mode **P**, then depress the brake pedal.



- ▶ Press the "**START/STOP**" button. The engine starts.

## Back-up switch-off



If the electronic key is not detected or is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears in the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.

- ▶ To confirm the instruction to switch off the engine, press the "**START/STOP**" button for approximately 5 seconds.

In the event of a fault with the electronic key, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Emergency switch-off

In case of emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions (even when driving).

- ▶ Press the "**START/STOP**" button for about 5 seconds.

In this case, the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.

On certain versions with automatic gearbox (EAT6/EAT8), the steering column does not lock.

## Electric parking brake

In automatic mode, this system applies the parking brake when the engine is switched off and releases it when the vehicle moves off.




At any time, with the engine running:

- ▶ To apply the parking brake, briefly pull the control.
- ▶ To release it, briefly push the control while pressing the brake pedal.

Automatic mode is activated by default.

This automatic operation can be deactivated in certain situations.

## Indicator lamp

 This indicator lamp comes on both on the instrument panel and on the control to confirm that the parking brake has been applied, accompanied by display of the message "**Parking brake applied**".

The indicator lamp goes out to confirm the release of the parking brake, accompanied by the display of the message "**Parking brake released**".

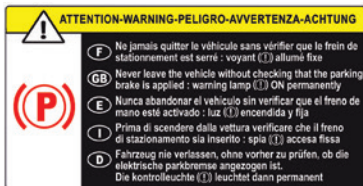
The indicator lamp flashes in response to a manual request to apply or release the brake.

**!** In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake will not operate.

As a safety measure, with a manual gearbox, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by engaging a gear.

As a safety measure, with an automatic gearbox, if the parking brake is not applied, immobilise the vehicle by placing the supplied chocks against one of the wheels.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



**!** Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the indicator

lamps on the instrument panel and the control lever must be on fixed.

If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

**!** Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle, as they could release the parking brake.

**!** **When the vehicle is parked: on a steep slope, heavily loaded or during towing**

With a manual gearbox, turn the wheels toward the pavement and engage a gear.

With an automatic gearbox, turn the wheels toward the pavement and select mode **P**.

When towing, the vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.

## Manual operation

### Manual release

With the ignition on or engine running:

- ▶ Depress the brake pedal.
- ▶ While maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, briefly push the control lever.

**i** If you push the control lever without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake is not released and a message is displayed.

## Manual application

With the vehicle stationary:

- ▶ Pull briefly on the control lever.

The control lever indicator lamp flashes to confirm the application request.

## Automatic operation

### Automatic release

First ensure that the engine is running and the driver's door is properly closed.

The electric parking brake **gradually releases automatically as the vehicle moves off**.

#### With a manual gearbox

- ▶ Fully depress the clutch pedal and engage first gear or reverse.
- ▶ Depress the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.

#### With an automatic gearbox

- ▶ Depress the brake pedal.
- ▶ Select mode **D**, **M** or **R**.
- ▶ Release the brake pedal and depress the accelerator pedal.

**i** With an automatic gearbox, if the brake does not release automatically, check that the front doors are correctly closed.

**!** When stationary with the engine running, do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily. Risk of parking brake release.

## Automatic application

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake is applied automatically when the engine is switched off.

**!** It is not applied automatically if the engine stalls or enters STOP mode with Stop & Start.

**i** In automatic mode, the parking brake can be manually applied or released at any time using the control.

## Special cases

### Immobilising the vehicle with the engine running

To immobilise the vehicle with the engine running, briefly pull the control lever.

### Parking the vehicle with the brake released

**!** In very cold conditions (ice), applying the parking brake is not recommended. To immobilise the vehicle, engage a gear or place the chocks against one of the wheels.

**i** With an automatic gearbox, mode **P** is automatically selected when the ignition is switched off. The wheels are blocked. For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** With an automatic gearbox, while mode **N** is selected, opening the driver's door triggers an audible signal. It stops when the driver's door closes again.

## Deactivating automatic operation

In some situations, for example when it is extremely cold or when towing (e.g. caravan, breakdown), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.

- ▶ Start the engine.
- ▶ Use the control to apply the parking brake, if it is released.
- ▶ Take your foot fully off the brake pedal.
- ▶ Keep the control pushed in the release direction for 10 to a maximum of 15 seconds.
- ▶ Release the control.
- ▶ Depress and hold the brake pedal.
- ▶ Pull the control in the application direction for 2 seconds.



This indicator lamp on the instrument panel comes on to confirm deactivation of the automatic functions.

- ▶ Release the control and the brake pedal.

From this point onwards, only the manual functions, using the control, allow the parking brake to be applied and released.

- ▶ Follow this procedure again to reactivate automatic operation (confirmed by the indicator lamp on the instrument panel going out).

## Emergency braking

If depressing the brake pedal fails to provide effective braking or in exceptional circumstances (e.g. driver unwell, assisted driving), the vehicle can be braked by sustained pulling on the electric parking brake control. Braking continues for as long as the control is kept pulled, and ceases when the control is released.

The ABS and DSC systems stabilise the vehicle during emergency braking.

If emergency braking malfunctions, the message **"Parking brake fault"** will be displayed on the instrument panel.



If the ABS and DSC systems malfunction, indicated by lighting one or both warning lamps on the instrument panel, the vehicle's stability is no longer ensured.

- ▶ In this case, ensure the vehicle's stability by successive and repeated "pull-release" actions on the electric parking brake control until the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

## Manual gearbox

### Engaging 5<sup>th</sup> or 6<sup>th</sup> gear

- Move the gear selector fully to the right to engage 5<sup>th</sup> or 6<sup>th</sup> gear.

**!** Failure to follow this instruction could cause permanent damage to the gearbox (inadvertent engagement of 3<sup>rd</sup> or 4<sup>th</sup> gear).

### Engaging reverse gear



- Raise the trigger under the knob and move the gear lever to the left, then forwards.

**i** Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

**!** As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine, always select neutral and depress the clutch pedal.

## Automatic gearbox

### With petrol / Diesel engines

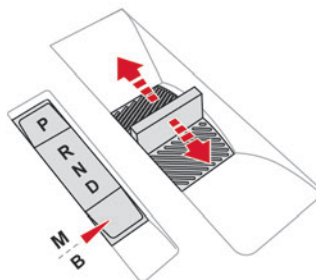
Automatic 6-speed or 8-speed gearbox with push selector. It also offers a manual mode with gear changes via control paddles located behind the steering wheel.

### With rechargeable hybrid engine

Automatic 8-speed gearbox with push selector and regenerative braking function.

With the exception of the manual mode and regenerative braking function, its operation is identical to that of other EAT8 gearboxes.

### Push selector



#### P. Auto Park

Press this button to switch to Parking mode. For parking the vehicle: the front wheels are blocked.

#### R. Reverse

#### N. Neutral

To free-wheel and move the vehicle, with the ignition off.

For more information on **Free-wheeling**, refer to the corresponding section.

#### D. Driving in automatic mode

The gearbox manages gear changes according to the style of driving, the road profile and the vehicle load.

#### M. Driving in manual mode (Petrol / Diesel)

Press this button to switch to manual mode. The driver changes gear using the steering-mounted controls.

#### B. Driving in automatic mode with regenerative braking function (Rechargeable hybrid)

Press this button to activate the regenerative braking function. The gearbox also manages braking when the accelerator pedal is released.

- In mode **N**, with your foot on the brake pedal, push without passing the point of resistance:

- Forwards, mode **R** is selected.
- Backwards, mode **D** is selected.

**Release the selector fully after each push; it will then return to its initial position.**



## Special cases

To avoid mode **N** (quick change from **D** to **R** and back again):

- ▶ In mode **R**, push backwards past the point of resistance, mode **D** is selected.
- ▶ In mode **D**, push forwards past the point of resistance, mode **R** is selected.
- ▶ To return to mode **N**, push without passing the point of resistance.

## Steering-mounted controls

(Depending on equipment)

In mode **M** or **D**, the steering-mounted control paddles can be used to change gear manually. They cannot be used to select neutral or to engage or disengage reverse gear.



- ▶ Pull the "+" or "-" paddle towards you and release to shift up or down a gear, respectively.

## Information displayed on the instrument panel

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox status is displayed on the instrument panel:

**P** Parking

<b>R</b>	Reverse
<b>N</b>	Neutral
<b>D1...6 / 8</b>	Automatic forward gear
<b>B1...8</b>	Automatic forward gear with regenerative braking function activated
<b>M1...6 / 8</b>	Manual forward gear

In all-electric driving, the gear engaged is not indicated.

The state of the gearbox remains displayed on the instrument panel for a few seconds after switching off the ignition.

## Operation

Only appropriate mode change instructions are validated.

With the engine running, if it is necessary to depress the brake pedal to change modes, an alert message will be displayed on the instrument panel.

! With the engine running and the brakes released, if **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves off, even without pressing the accelerator pedal.

Never depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time - risk of damage to the gearbox!

! If you open the driver's door while mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound and mode **P** will be engaged. The

audible signal stops when the driver's door is closed.

! At speeds below 3 mph (5 km/h), opening the driver's door will engage mode **P** - risk of sudden braking!

! In the event of battery failure, it is essential to place the chock(s) supplied with the tool kit against one of the wheels to immobilise the vehicle.

## Special aspects of automatic mode

The gearbox selects the gear that provides optimal performance based on ambient temperature, road profile, vehicle loading and driving style.

For maximum acceleration, press the accelerator fully down (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the selected gear until the maximum engine speed is reached. Steering mounted controls allow the driver to temporarily select a gear, if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions permit.


## Special aspects of manual mode


The gearbox only changes from one gear to another if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions permit.

## Regenerative braking (Brake function)

The regenerative braking function emulates engine braking, slowing the vehicle with no need to depress the brake pedal. When the driver releases the accelerator pedal, the vehicle slows down more quickly.


The energy recovered when the accelerator pedal is released is used to partially recharge the traction battery.

 This partial recharging has no effect on the charge level indicator.

 The resulting deceleration of the vehicle does not cause the brake lamps to come on.

► From mode **D**, press button **B** to activate/deactivate the function.

**D** on the instrument panel is replaced with **B**. The state of the function is saved when the ignition is switched off.


 In some situations (e.g. battery full, extreme temperatures), the amount of regenerative braking may be temporarily limited, resulting in less deceleration. The driver must remain alert to traffic conditions and must always be ready to use the brake pedal.

### Regenerative braking using the brake pedal

Energy recovery can also be produced by depressing the brake pedal in order to partially recharge the traction battery, without affecting the charge level indicator.

## Starting the vehicle

- Fully depress the brake pedal.
  - Start the engine.
  - With your foot on the brake pedal, push once or twice backwards to select automatic mode **D**, or forwards to shift into reverse gear **R**.
  - Release the brake pedal.
  - Accelerate gradually to automatically release the electric parking brake.
- The vehicle moves off immediately.


 **Automatic gearbox**  
Never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

## Switching the vehicle off


Regardless of the current gearbox mode, mode **P** is immediately engaged automatically when the ignition is switched off.

However, in mode **N**, mode **P** will be engaged after a delay of 5 seconds (time to enable free-wheeling mode).

Check that mode **P** has been engaged and that the electric parking brake was applied automatically; if not, apply it manually.

 The corresponding indicator lamps on the gear selector and the electric parking brake control must be on, as well as the indicator lamps on the instrument panel.

## Gearbox malfunction

 This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. Do not drive faster than 62 mph (100 km/h), keeping to the speed limit.

### Switching of the gearbox to back-up mode


Mode **D** locks in third gear.

The paddles on the steering wheel do not work and mode **M** is no longer accessible.

You may feel a significant jolt on engaging reverse gear. This will not damage the gearbox.

## Selector malfunction

### Minor malfunction

 This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Drive carefully.

Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. In some cases, the selector indicator lamps may no longer come on, but the gearbox state is still displayed on the instrument panel.

## Major malfunction



This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by the display of a message.

### ! You must stop the vehicle.

Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Progressive Hydraulic Cushions

This suspension system with progressive hydraulic cushions improves driving comfort by filtering out the imperfections and demands of the road surface.

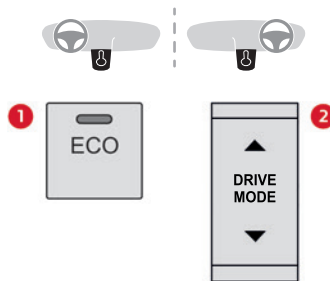
Each shock absorber is equipped with a hydraulic compression stop (at the base) and a hydraulic rebound stop (at the top).

Depending on the intensity of the shock to be absorbed, these stops provide the vehicle with a greater freedom of movement or gradually slow down the amount of movement in order to avoid any sudden jolts at the end of travel.

Unlike conventional suspension which absorbs the energy but then partially returns some of it, this active suspension absorbs and dissipates this energy, without producing any rebound.

## Driving modes

The driving modes available depend on the engine and equipment of the vehicle. Driving modes are selected using one of the following controls (depending on version):



1. Pressing the control activates **Eco** mode. The indicator lamp comes on.
2. Pressing the control displays the modes on the instrument panel.

The selected mode is activated immediately.

With the Advanced Grip Control system, additional driving modes are available.

For more information on **Advanced Grip Control**, refer to the corresponding section.

## With petrol / Diesel engines

Whenever the ignition is switched on,

**Normal** driving mode is selected by default.

## Eco

To reduce energy consumption by reducing the performance of the heating and air conditioning, without deactivating them.

## Normal

To restore the default settings.

## Sport

To obtain more dynamic driving with action on the power steering, accelerator and gear changes with an automatic gearbox.

### i Coasting mode

Depending on version or engine, with an EAT8 gearbox and the gear selector in mode **D**, except in **Sport** mode, gradually and fully releasing the accelerator pedal allows free-wheeling which can save fuel.

A drop in engine speed is normal (rev counter at idle, drop in engine noise).

## With rechargeable hybrid engine

Whenever the ignition is switched on, **Electric** driving mode is selected by default.

## Electric


Allows driving using 100% electrical energy.

The maximum speed is approximately 84 mph (135 km/h).

When starting the vehicle, if the conditions do not allow the activation or retention of **Electric**

mode, the message "**Electric mode currently unavailable**" is displayed on the instrument panel. The vehicle automatically changes to **Hybrid** mode.

If an LED comes on under the interior rear view mirror, visible from outside the vehicle, this confirms that you are driving in **Electric** mode (depending on country of sale).


 The LED can be deactivated by inserting the tip of a paper clip or other similar object into the hole located underneath the interior rear view mirror.


#### Conditions of activation

- Adequate battery charge level. Charging the vehicle after each drive is therefore recommended. **Electric** mode is available as long as there is power left in the battery.
- Outside temperature between approximately -5°C and 45°C.

#### Manually exiting the mode

- ▶ Fully depress the accelerator pedal, or
- ▶ Select another mode.

 In case of non-use of the vehicle for a long period (several months), a restart of the petrol engine may occur even if the battery is charged.

 In the event of multiple starts of the internal combustion engine without a sufficient rise in temperature, **Electric** mode may be

temporarily unavailable (natural phenomenon of dilution of fuel in oil). The message "**Electric mode unavailable: automatic operation in progress**" then appears on the instrument panel.

To regain normal electrical operation, drive approximately 50 miles (80 km) in "motorway" conditions or approximately 125 miles (200 km) in urban conditions.

This phenomenon does not cause any mechanical or electrical damage. It can occur several times in the life of the vehicle.

#### Hybrid

To optimise the vehicle's fuel consumption by managing the **alternating or simultaneous operation of the two types of engine**, depending on driving conditions and driving style.

In **Hybrid** mode, it is possible to drive in 100% electric mode if the battery charge level is sufficient and acceleration requirements are moderate.

#### Sport

To obtain more dynamic driving in order to benefit from the maximum performance of the vehicle.


Electric power is used to supplement the petrol engine as long as there is energy left in the battery.

## Hill start assist


This system keeps the vehicle briefly stationary (for approximately 2 seconds) when making a hill start, while you transfer your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.

The system is only active when:

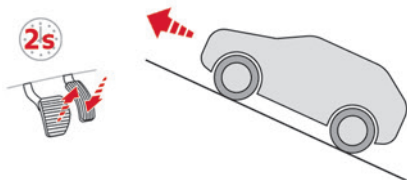
- The vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal.
- Certain slope conditions are met.
- The driver's door is closed.

 Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held temporarily by hill start assist.

If someone needs to get out of the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. Then check that the parking brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the electric parking brake control are on fixed.

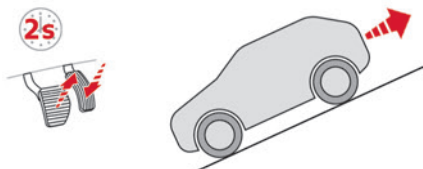
 The hill start assist function cannot be deactivated. However, using the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle interrupts its operation.

## Operation



**Facing uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal:**

- If first gear or neutral is engaged on a manual gearbox.
- If mode **D** or **M** is selected on an automatic gearbox.



**Facing downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal.**

## Malfunction



If the event of a malfunction, these warning lamps light up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Gear shift indicator

(Depending on engine)

This system is designed to reduce fuel consumption by recommending the most suitable gear.

## Operation

Depending on the driving situation and the vehicle's equipment, the system may recommend skipping one or more gears. Gear engagement recommendations are not to be considered mandatory. Indeed, the configuration of the road, the traffic density and safety remain determining factors when choosing the best gear. Therefore, the driver remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the system's advice.

The system cannot be deactivated.



With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual operation.



The information appears on the instrument panel, in the form of an arrow and the recommended gear.



The system adapts the gear change instructions according to the driving

conditions (e.g. slope, load) and driving style (e.g. power demand, acceleration, braking).

The system never suggests:

- engaging first gear.
- engaging reverse gear.

## Stop & Start

The Stop & Start function puts the engine temporarily into standby - STOP mode - during phases when the vehicle is stationary (e.g. red lights, traffic jams). The engine automatically restarts - START mode - as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again.

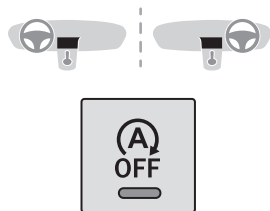
Primarily designed for urban use, the function is intended to reduce fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

The function does not affect the functionalities of the vehicle, in particular the braking.

## Deactivation/Reactivation

The function is **activated** by default when the ignition is switched on.

**To deactivate/reactivate the function:**



► Press the button.

A message in the instrument panel confirms the change of status.

When the function is deactivated, the orange indicator lamp is lit; if the engine was in standby, it restarts immediately.

### Associated indicator lamps



Function activated.



Function deactivated or malfunction.

### ! Opening the bonnet

Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury caused by the engine restarting automatically.



### ! Driving on flooded roads

Before entering into a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.

For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

## Operation

### Main conditions for operation

- The driver's door must be closed.
- The driver's seat belt must be fastened.
- The level of charge in the battery must be sufficient.
- The temperature of the engine must be within its nominal operating range.
- The outside temperature must be between 0°C and 35°C.

### Putting the engine into standby (STOP mode)

The engine automatically enters standby mode as soon as the driver indicates their intention to stop:

- **With a manual gearbox:** at speeds below 20 mph (3 km/h), with the gear lever in neutral and the clutch pedal released.
- **With an automatic gearbox:**
  - With the gear selector in mode **D** or **M**, at speeds below 12 mph (20 km/h) or 2

mph (3 km/h) (depending on engine), by depressing the brake pedal.

- Gear selector in mode **N**, at a speed of 0 mph (0 km/h).
- Gear selector in mode **P** and brake pedal released, at a speed of 0 mph (0 km/h).

### Time counter

A time counter adds up the time spent in standby during the journey. It is reset to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

### Special cases:

The engine will not go into standby if the conditions for operation are not met and in the following cases:

- Steep slope (ascending or descending).
- Vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start (with the key or the **START/STOP** button).
- Needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
- Demisting active.



In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

**i** After the engine has restarted, **STOP** mode is not available until the vehicle has reached a speed of 5 mph (8 km/h).

**i** During parking manoeuvres, **STOP** mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear or turning the steering wheel.

## Restarting the engine (START mode)

The engine automatically restarts as soon as the driver indicates the intention of moving off again:

**With a manual gearbox:** with the clutch pedal fully depressed.

**With an automatic gearbox:**

- With the selector in mode **D** or **M**: with the brake pedal released.
- With the selector in mode **N** and the brake pedal released: with the selector at **D** or **M**.
- With the selector in mode **P** and the brake pedal depressed: with the selector at **R**, **N**, **D** or **M**.
- With reverse gear engaged.

## Special cases

The engine will restart automatically if the conditions for operation are met again and in the following cases:

- With a manual gearbox: vehicle speed exceeds 2.5 mph (4 km/h).
- With an automatic gearbox:
  - With the selector in position **N** and the brake pedal released, vehicle speed exceeds 0.6 mph (1 km/h).
  - Adaptive cruise control function deactivated.



In these cases, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

## Malfunctions



In the event of a fault with the system, this warning lamp flashes for a few moments

on the instrument panel, then remains on, accompanied by the display of a message. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## The vehicle stalls in STOP mode

All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on if there is a fault.

- ▶ Switch off the ignition then start the engine again with the key or the "START/STOP" button.

### ! 12 V battery

The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery of specific technology and specification. All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop

## Tyre under-inflation detection

This system alerts the driver if one or more tyres suffer a drop in pressure.

The alert is raised when the vehicle is moving, not when stationary.

It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised every time the tyre pressures are adjusted or a wheel changed.**

It takes into account the last values stored during the reinitialisation request. It is therefore essential that the tyre pressure is correct during

the operation. This operation is the driver's responsibility.

**!** The tyre under-inflation detection cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. This system does not avoid the need to regularly check the tyre pressures (including the spare wheel), especially before a long journey.

Driving with under-inflated tyres, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy load, high speed, long journey):

- worsens road-holding.
- lengthens braking distances.
- causes premature wear of the tyres.
- increases energy consumption.

**i** The inflation pressures defined for the vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.

For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.

### ! Checking tyre pressures

This check should be done monthly when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds). Otherwise, add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

## Under-inflation alert



This is signalled by the fixed illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message.

- ▶ Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and avoid sudden braking.
- ▶ Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.



The loss of pressure detected may not always cause visible deformation of the tyre.

Do not rely on just a visual check.

- ▶ Using a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of all four tyres when cold.
- ▶ If it is not possible to carry out this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.
- ▶ In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment).



Driving too slowly may not ensure optimum monitoring.

The alert is not immediately triggered in the event of a sudden loss of pressure or tyre blow-out. This is because analysis of the values read by the wheel's speed sensors can take several minutes.

The alert may be delayed at speeds below 25 mph (40 km/h), or when adopting a sporty driving mode.



The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

## Reinitialisation

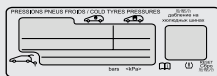
The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressure of one or more tyres, and after changing one or more wheels.



Before reinitialising the system, make sure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the values written on the tyre pressure label.

Check the pressures of the four tyres before performing the reinitialisation.

The system does not advise if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.



With the vehicle stationary, the system is reinitialised via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

- ▶ In this menu, select the **"Driving functions"** tab.
- ▶ On this page, select the **"Under-inflation initialisation"** function.
- ▶ Select **"Yes"** to confirm.

The reinitialisation is confirmed by the display of a message and an audible signal.



### Snow chains

The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

## Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, these warning lamps light up on the instrument panel.

A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

In this case, the tyre under-inflation monitoring function is no longer performed.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



### Non-standard or 'space-saver' spare wheel

The use of this type of spare wheel may suspend tyre pressure monitoring.

In this case, the malfunction warning lamp comes on and disappears once the wheel has been replaced by one of uniform size (the same as the others), the pressure readjusted and the reinitialisation carried out.



## Driving and manoeuvring aids - General recommendations

**i** Driving and manoeuvring aids cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. The driver must comply with the Highway Code, must remain in control of the vehicle in all circumstances and must be able to retake control of it at all times. The driver must adapt the speed to climatic conditions, traffic and the state of the road.

It is the driver's responsibility to constantly monitor traffic conditions, assess the distance and relative speed of other vehicles, and anticipate their manoeuvres before using the direction indicator and changing lanes. These systems do not make it possible to exceed the laws of physics.

### **i** Driving aids

You should hold the steering wheel with both hands, always use the door and interior mirrors, always leave your feet close to the pedals and take a break every 2 hours.

### **i** Manoeuvring aids

The driver must always check the surroundings of the vehicle before and during

the whole manoeuvre, in particular using the mirrors.

### **!** Radar(s)

The operation of the radar(s), along with any associated functions, may be affected by the accumulation of dirt (e.g. mud, ice), in poor weather conditions (e.g. heavy rain, snow), or if the bumpers are damaged. If the front bumper is to be repainted, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop; certain types of paint could interfere with the operation of the radar(s).



### **!** Driving aids camera

This camera and its associated functions may be impaired or not work if the windscreen area in front of the camera is dirty, misty, frosty, covered with snow, damaged or masked by a sticker.

In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

Poor visibility (e.g. inadequate street lighting, heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall), dazzle (e.g. headlights of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a

tunnel, alternating shade and light) can also impair detection performance.

In the event of a windscreen replacement, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to recalibrate the camera; otherwise, the operation of the associated driving aids may be disrupted.

### **i** Other cameras

The images from the camera(s) displayed on the touch screen or on the instrument panel may be distorted by the terrain.

In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast. Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

### **!** Sensors

The operation of the sensors, as well as any associated functions, may be disrupted by noise pollution such as that emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills), by the accumulation of snow or dead leaves on the road or in the event of damaged bumpers and mirrors. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

A front or rear impact to the vehicle can upset the sensors' settings, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be distorted. The sensors do not systematically detect obstacles that are too low (pavements, studs) or too thin (trees, posts, wire fences). Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or may no longer be detected during the manoeuvre. Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.

**i Maintenance**

Clean the bumpers and door mirrors and the field of vision of the cameras regularly. When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the spray from at least 30 cm away from the radar, sensors and cameras.

**! Mats/Pedal trims**

The use of mats or pedal trims not approved by CITROËN may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter or cruise control. To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:

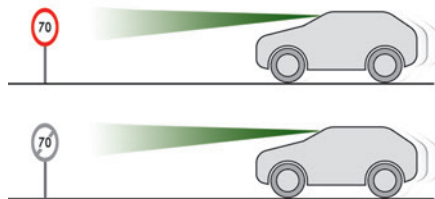
- Ensure that the mat is secured correctly.
- Never fit one mat on top of another.

**i Units of speed**

Ensure that the units of speed displayed on the instrument panel (mph or km/h) are those for the country you are driving in. If this is not the case, when the vehicle is stationary, set the display to the required units of speed so that it complies with what is authorised locally. In case of doubt, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Road signs recognition


**!** For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**






This system displays the maximum speed authorised locally on the instrument panel, using:




- Speed limit signs detected by the camera.
- Speed limit information from the navigation system's mapping.

- Signs indicating a shared traffic zone detected by the camera.

Sign detected	Suggested speed (calculated)
<p><b>Entry into a shared traffic zone</b></p> <p>Example:</p> 	<p><b>Without CITROËN Connect Nav</b></p> <p>10 mph or 20 km/h (depending on the units on the instrument panel)</p> <p><b>With CITROËN Connect Nav</b></p> <p>Display of the speed in force in the country you are driving in.</p>

- Some supplementary traffic signs detected by the camera.

Supplementary traffic sign detected	Display of the speed associated with the supplementary traffic sign
<b>Speed limit when raining</b> Examples: 	If the wiper control stalk is in the "intermittent wipe" or "automatic wipe" position (in order to activate the rain sensor): 68 mph (110 km/h) (for example)
<b>Speed limit when towing</b> 	If an approved towing device is fixed to the vehicle: 56 mph (90 km/h) (for example)
<b>Speed limit applicable over a certain distance</b> Example: 	43 mph (70 km/h) (for example)

Supplementary traffic sign detected	Display of the speed associated with the supplementary traffic sign
<b>Speed limit for vehicles with a gross vehicle weight or gross train weight less than 3.5 tonnes</b> 	56 mph (90 km/h) (for example)
<b>Speed limit in case of snow</b> Example: 	If the outside temperature is below 3°C: 19 mph (30 km/h) (for example) with a "snowflake" symbol
<b>Speed limit at certain times of the day</b> Example: 	19 mph (30 km/h) (for example) with a "clock" symbol

**!** Navigation mapping should be regularly updated in order to receive accurate speed limit information from the system.

**!** The units for the speed limit (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in.

This should be taken into account to ensure you observe the speed limit.

For the system to work properly when changing countries, the speed unit of the instrument panel must match that of the country you are driving in.

**!** Automatic sign reading is a driving aid system and does not always display the correct speed limits.

The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over those displayed by the system.

The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

**i** Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed.

The display of the speed limit on the instrument panel is updated when passing a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

## Activation/Deactivation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.



The settings are changed via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

## Information displayed on the instrument panel



1. Detected speed limit indication or
2. End of speed limit indication



The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.



On detecting speed limit information, the system displays the value.



For a suggested maximum speed, the first time that the vehicle exceeds it **by more than 3 mph**

(5 km/h) (e.g. 59 mph (95 km/h)), the speed is displayed and flashes for 10 seconds (depending on version).

## Operating limits

The system does not take account of reduced speed limits, especially those imposed in the following cases:

- Poor weather (rain, snow).
- Atmospheric pollution.
- Towing.
- Driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted.
- Tyre repaired using the temporary puncture repair kit.
- Young drivers.

The system may not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period and in the following situations:

- Road signs that are obstructed, non-standard, damaged or bent.
- Obsolete or incorrect maps.

## Recommendation

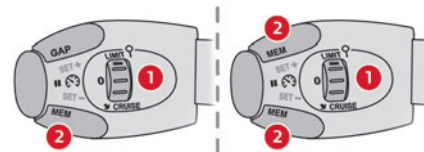


In addition to **Road signs recognition**, the driver can select the speed displayed as a speed setting for the speed limiter or cruise control

using the speed limiter or cruise control 'store' button.

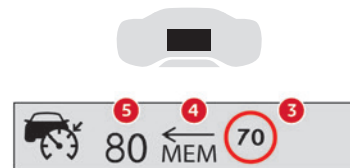
**i** For more information on the **Speed limiter, Cruise control** or **Adaptive cruise control**, refer to the corresponding sections.

## Steering-mounted controls



1. Speed limiter/cruise control mode selection
2. Memorise the speed setting

## Information displayed on the instrument panel



3. Speed limit indication
4. Speed memorisation prompt
5. Current speed setting

## Storing the speed setting



► Switch on the speed limiter/cruise control. The speed limiter/cruise control information is displayed.

Upon detecting a sign suggesting a new speed setting, the system displays the value and "MEM" flashes for a few seconds, prompting you to save it as a new speed setting.

**i** If there is a difference of less than 6 mph (9 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the Road signs recognition, the "MEM" symbol is not displayed.

Depending on the road conditions, several speeds may be displayed.

► Press button **2** **once** to save the suggested speed value.

A message is displayed, confirming the request.

► Press button **2** **again** to confirm and save the new speed setting.

The display then reverts to its previous state.

## Extended Traffic Sign Recognition

**!** For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**



This additional system recognises these road signs and displays them on the instrument panel.

As you approach it, the symbol of the corresponding sign is displayed on the instrument panel.

**!** The actual road signs always take priority over those displayed by the system.

The signs must comply with the Vienna Convention on road signs.

## Activation/Deactivation



The settings are changed via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

## Programmable speed limiter

**!** For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**



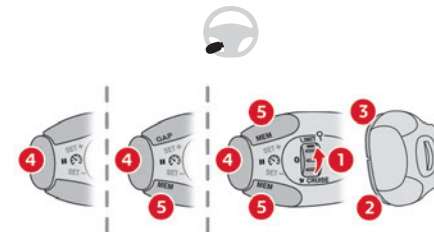
This system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver (speed setting).

The speed limiter is switched on manually.

The minimum speed setting is 19 mph (30 km/h).

The speed setting remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

## Steering-mounted control

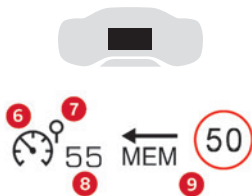


1. ON (**LIMIT** position)/OFF (position **0**)
2. Reduce the speed setting
3. Increase the speed setting
4. Pause/resume speed limiter with the speed setting previously stored

5. Depending on version:  
 Display the speed thresholds saved using the Memorising speeds function or  
 Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function (**MEM** display)

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or the **Road signs recognition**, refer to the corresponding sections.

## Information displayed on the instrument panel



6. Speed limiter status: on (amber)/pause (grey).  
 7. Speed limiter mode selection indication  
 8. Speed setting value  
 9. Speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function (depending on version)

## Switching on/Pausing

- Turn thumbwheel 1 to the "**LIMIT**" position to select speed limiter mode; the function is paused.

- If the speed limit setting is suitable (most recent speed setting programmed in the system), press button **4-II** to switch the speed limiter on.  
 ► Pressing **4-II** again temporarily pauses the function (pause).

**i** When the speed setting remains below the vehicle's speed for a prolonged period of time, an audible warning is emitted.

## Adjusting the limit speed setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.

To modify the limit speed setting based on the vehicle's current speed:

- For steps of +/- 1 mph (1 km/h), briefly press **2-SET-** or **3-SET+** repeatedly.  
 ► For steps of +/- 5 mph (5 km/h), press and hold **2-SET-** or **3-SET+**.

To change the limit speed setting using memorised speeds, via the touch screen:

- Press **5-MEM** to display the memorised speed settings.  
 ► Press the touch screen button for the desired speed setting.

The selection screen closes after a few moments.

This setting becomes the new limit speed.

To modify the speed limit setting based on the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function displayed on the instrument panel:

- Press **5-MEM** once; a message is displayed, confirming the memorisation request.  
 ► Press **5-MEM** again to save the suggested speed.  
 The new speed setting value is displayed on the instrument panel.

## Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

- Fully depress the accelerator pedal. The speed limiter is temporarily deactivated and the displayed speed setting flashes.  
 ► Release the accelerator pedal to return to below the speed setting.  
 When exceeding the speed is not due to the driver's action (e.g. in case of a steep slope), an audible signal is triggered immediately.

**!** On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the speed setting.  
 If necessary, apply the brakes to control your vehicle's speed.

When the vehicle speed returns to the speed setting level, the speed limiter operates again: the speed setting display becomes fixed again.

## Switching off

- Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**OFF**" position: speed limiter information is no longer displayed.

## Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed flashing and then fixed instead of the speed setting.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Cruise control - Specific recommendations

**!** The cruise control function does not guarantee compliance with the maximum authorised speed and the safety distance between vehicles, the driver remains responsible for their driving.

In the interest of public safety, only use cruise control if the traffic conditions enable vehicles to drive at a steady speed and maintain an adequate safety distance.

**Remain vigilant while cruise control is activated.** If you press and hold one of the speed setting modification buttons, your vehicle may change speed very abruptly. When **descending a steep hill**, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the set speed. Brake if necessary to control the vehicle speed.

On **steep climbs** or when towing, the set speed may not be reached or maintained.

### **i** Exceeding the programmed speed setting

You can **temporarily** exceed the speed setting by pressing the accelerator pedal (the programmed speed flashes).

To return to the speed setting, release the accelerator pedal (when the set speed is reached again, the displayed speed stops flashing).

### **!** Operating limits

Never use the system in the following situations:

- In an urban area with the risk of pedestrians crossing the road.
- In heavy traffic (except versions with the Stop & Go function).
- On winding or steep roads.
- On slippery or flooded roads.
- In poor weather conditions.
- In the event of restricted visibility for the driver.
- Driving on a speed circuit.
- Driving on a rolling road.
- When using a 'space-saver' type spare wheel.
- When using snow chains, non-slip covers or studded tyres.

## Programmable cruise control

**!** For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and the **Cruise control - Specific recommendations**.



This system automatically maintains the vehicle's speed at the value programmed by the driver (speed setting), without the use of the accelerator pedal.

Cruise control is switched on manually.

It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h).

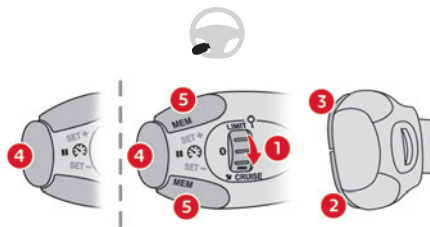
With a manual gearbox, third gear or higher must be engaged.

With an automatic gearbox, mode **D** or second gear or higher in mode **M** must be engaged.

**i** Cruise control remains active after changing gear, regardless of the gearbox type, on engines fitted with the Stop & Start function.

**i** Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting.

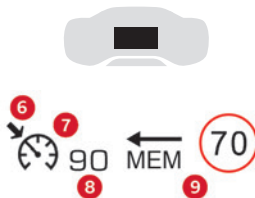
## Steering-mounted control



1. ON (**CRUISE** position)/OFF (position 0)
2. Activate cruise control at the current speed/  
decrease speed setting
3. Activate cruise control at the current speed/  
increase speed setting
4. Pause/resume cruise control with the speed  
setting previously saved
5. Depending on version:  
Display the speed thresholds saved using the  
Memorising speeds function  
or  
Use the speed suggested by the Road signs  
recognition function (**MEM** display)

For more information on **Memorising speeds**  
or the **Road signs recognition**, refer to the  
corresponding sections.

## Information displayed on the instrument panel



6. Speed limiter status: on (amber)/pause  
(grey).
7. Cruise control mode selection
8. Speed setting value
9. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit  
recognition and recommendation system  
(depending on version)

## Switching on/pausing

- ▶ Turn thumbwheel **1** to the "**CRUISE**" position to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.
- ▶ Press button **2-SET-** or **3-SET+** to activate cruise control and save a speed setting when the vehicle has reached the desired speed; the vehicle's current speed is saved as the speed setting.
- ▶ Release the accelerator pedal.
- ▶ Pressing button **4-II** temporarily pauses the function (pause).

- ▶ Pressing button **4-II** again resumes operation of the cruise control (ON).

- Cruise control can also be paused temporarily:
  - by pressing the brake pedal.
  - automatically, if the electronic stability control (ESC) system is triggered.

## Changing the cruise speed setting

- The cruise control must be active.  
To change the cruise speed setting, based on the vehicle's current speed:
- ▶ For steps of +/- 1 mph (1 km/h), briefly press **2-SET-** or **3-SET+** repeatedly.
  - ▶ For steps of +/- 5 mph (5 km/h), press and hold **2-SET-** or **3-SET+**.

- ! Pressing and holding **2-SET-** or **3-SET+** results in a rapid change in the speed of the vehicle.

- ! As a precaution, we recommend setting a cruise speed fairly close to the current speed of your vehicle, to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

To change the cruise speed setting using memorised speed settings and from the touch screen:

- ▶ Press **5-MEM** to display the memorised speed settings.



► Press the touch screen button for the desired speed setting.

The selection screen closes after a few moments.

This setting becomes the new cruise speed.

To change the cruise speed setting using the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function displayed on the instrument panel:

► Press **5-MEM** once; a message is displayed, confirming the memorisation request.

► Press **5-MEM** again to save the suggested speed.

The new speed setting value is displayed on the instrument panel.

## Switching off

► Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "0" position: the cruise control information disappears from the screen.

## Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed flashing and then fixed instead of the speed setting.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Memorising speeds

This function, used only for the speed limiter and programmable cruise control, lets you save speed settings that will subsequently be proposed for the purpose of configuring these two systems.

You can memorise multiple speed settings for each of the two systems.

By default, some speed settings are already memorised.

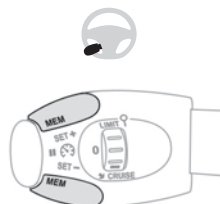
**!** As a safety measure, the driver must only change speed settings when stationary.

## Changing a speed setting



Speed settings can be activated, deactivated, selected and changed in the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

## "MEM" button



With this button, you can select a memorised speed setting to use with the speed limiter or the programmable cruise control.

For more information on the **Speed limiter** or **Cruise control**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Highway Driver Assist

Only available on versions with automatic gearbox.

This system automatically adjusts the speed and corrects the trajectory of the vehicle, using Adaptive cruise control with Stop&Go function in conjunction with Lane Positioning Assist.

These two functions must be activated and in operation.

For more information on **Adaptive cruise control** and **Lane Positioning Assist**, refer to the corresponding sections.

**!** The system assists the driver by acting on the steering, acceleration and braking within the physical limits and capacities of the vehicle. Certain road infrastructure elements or vehicles in the surroundings may not be properly seen or may be poorly interpreted by the camera and radar, resulting in an unexpected change in direction, a lack of steering correction and/or inappropriate management of acceleration or braking.

**!** Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works with moving vehicles driving in the same direction as your vehicle.

## Adaptive cruise control

**!** For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids** and the **Cruise control - Specific recommendations**.

This system automatically maintains the vehicle speed at a value set by the driver (speed setting), while respecting a safety distance from the vehicle in front (target vehicle) previously set by the driver. The system automatically manages the acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle. With a manual gearbox, the system slows the vehicle down as far as a speed of 19 mph (30 km/h).

With the **Stop function**, the system manages braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop.

With the **Stop & Go function**, the system manages braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop and restarts the vehicle.

**!** The brake lamps come on if the vehicle is slowed down by the system. It can be dangerous to drive if the brake lamps are not in perfect working order.

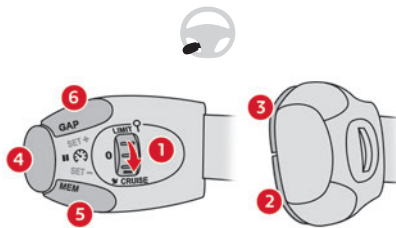


To do this, the system uses a camera fitted at the top of the windscreen and, depending on version, a radar fitted in the front bumper.

**!** Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works with moving vehicles driving in the same direction as your vehicle.

**i** If the driver activates the direction indicator to overtake a slower vehicle, cruise control may temporarily reduce the distance to the target vehicle to facilitate overtaking, without exceeding the speed setting.

## Steering-mounted controls



1. ON (**CRUISE** position)/OFF (position 0)
2. Activation of cruise control at the current speed/decrease speed setting
3. Activation of cruise control at the current speed/increase speed setting

4. Pause/resume cruise control with the speed setting previously saved  
Confirmation of vehicle restart after an automatic stop (for versions with Stop & Go function)
5. Use the speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function (**MEM** display)
6. Display and adjustment of the distance setting to the vehicle in front

## Use

### Activating the system (pause)

► With the engine running, turn thumbwheel 1 downwards to the **CRUISE** position. Cruise control is ready to operate (grey display).

### Switching on cruise control and setting the speed

With a manual gearbox, your speed must be between 19 and 112 mph (30 and 180 km/h). With an automatic EAT6 gearbox, your speed must be between 1 and 112 mph (2 and 180 km/h).

With an automatic EAT8 gearbox, your speed must be between 0 and 112 mph (0 and 180 km/h).

► Press **2-SET-** or **3-SET+**: the current speed becomes the speed setting (minimum 19 mph (30 km/h)) and cruise control is immediately activated (green display).

► Press **3-SET+** to increase or **2-SET-** to decrease the speed setting (steps of 5 mph (km/h) if held pressed).

**!** Pressing and holding either **2-SET-** or **3-SET+** results in a rapid change in the speed of the vehicle.

### Pausing/resumption of cruise control

► Press **4-II** or depress the **brake pedal** (grey display).

Cruise control may also have been paused:

- automatically, if the electronic stability control (ESC) system is triggered.
- by engaging neutral.
- when the speed of the vehicle goes below 19 mph (30 km/h) with a manual gearbox.
- when the speed of the engine goes below 1,100 rpm with a manual gearbox.
- by depressing the clutch pedal for more than 10 seconds.
- by using the electric parking brake.

► Press **4-II** to resume cruise control (green display).

With an EAT6 gearbox, following braking that has brought the vehicle to a complete stop, the system holds the vehicle stationary; cruise control is paused. The driver should depress the accelerator pedal to move off, then, when above 1 mph (2 km/h), reactivate the system by pressing **2-SET-**, **3-SET+** or **4-II**.

With an EAT8 gearbox, following braking that has brought the vehicle to a complete stop, if the

traffic conditions do not allow the vehicle to begin moving again within 3 seconds of stopping, press **4-II** or depress the accelerator pedal to move off.

If the driver takes no action after the vehicle has been stopped, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after about 5 minutes.

**i** Cruise control remains active after changing gear, regardless of the gearbox type.

**!** When the driver attempts to reactivate cruise control after the function has been paused, the message "**Activation not possible, unsuitable conditions**" is displayed briefly if reactivation is not possible (safety conditions not met).

### Changing the programmed speed setting with the Road signs recognition function

► Press **5-MEM** to accept the speed suggested by the system on the instrument panel, then press again to confirm.

**!** To prevent sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle, select a speed setting relatively close to the vehicle's current speed.

### Changing the inter-vehicle distance

► Press **6** to display the distance setting thresholds ("Distant", "Normal", "Close"), then press again to select a threshold. After a few seconds, the option is accepted and will be memorised when the ignition is switched off.

### Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

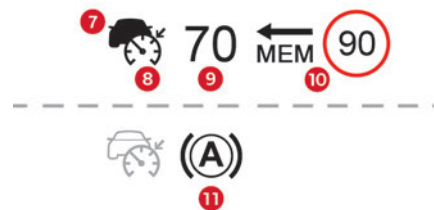
► Press the accelerator pedal fully. Distance monitoring and cruise control are deactivated while acceleration is maintained. "Cruise control on hold" is displayed.

### Deactivating the system

► Turn thumbwheel **1** upwards to the **OFF** position.

### Information displayed on the instrument panel

The following information can be seen on the instrument panel in "Driving" display mode.



7. Vehicle detected by the system (full symbol)
8. Cruise control active (colour not grey)

9. Speed setting value
10. Speed suggested by the Road signs recognition function
11. Vehicle held stationary (versions with automatic gearbox)



12. Inter-vehicle distance setting
13. Position of the vehicle detected by the system

## Messages and alerts

The digital instrument panel's **"Driving"** display mode must have been selected first.

**i** The actual order in which these messages or alerts are displayed may vary.



**"Cruise paused" or "Cruise control on hold"** following brief acceleration by the driver.



**"Active cruise control"**, no vehicle detected.



**"Cruise paused"**, vehicle detected.



**"Active cruise control"**, vehicle detected.



**(orange)**  
**"Take back control"**.

▶ Brake or accelerate, depending on the context.



**(red)**  
**"Take back control"**.

▶ **Take back control of the vehicle immediately:** the system cannot manage the current driving situation.



**"Activation refused, conditions unsuitable"**.

The system refuses to activate cruise control, as the necessary conditions are not fulfilled.

### Stop function



**"Cruise paused"** (for a few seconds).

The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop and is keeping it immobilised: cruise control is paused.

The driver must accelerate to move off again, then reactivate cruise control.

### Stop & Go function



**"To pick up again: accelerate or press the II button"**.

The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop.

Within 3 seconds, the vehicle gradually and automatically begins moving again.

Beyond 3 seconds, the driver must accelerate or press **4-II** to move off again.



While the vehicle is immobilised, the following recommendations apply:

- The driver should not leave the vehicle.

- Do not open the boot.
- Do not drop off or pick up passengers.
- Do not engage reverse gear.



When moving off again, watch out for cyclists, pedestrians and animals, as they may not be detected properly.

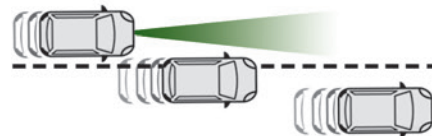
## Operating limits

Cruise control operates by day and night, in dry weather or moderate rainfall.

Certain situations cannot be managed by the system and require driver intervention.

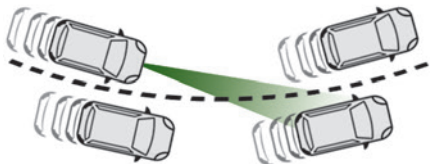
**Cases not taken into account by the system:**

- Pedestrians, cyclists, animals.
- Stationary vehicles (e.g. traffic jams, breakdown).

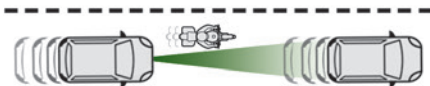


- Vehicles crossing your lane.
- Vehicles driving in the opposite direction.

**Situations where the driver must suspend the system:**



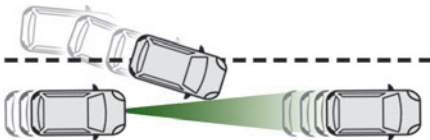
- Vehicles in a tight bend.
- When approaching a roundabout.



- When following a narrow vehicle.
- Reactivate the system when conditions allow.

#### Situations in which the driver is prompted to immediately resume control:

- Excessively sharp deceleration by the vehicle in front of you.



- When a vehicle cuts in sharply between your vehicle and the one in front.

**!** Some vehicles on the road may be poorly perceived or interpreted by the camera and/or the radar (e.g. truck), which

can lead to an incorrect evaluation of distances and result in inappropriate acceleration or braking of the vehicle.

- !** Pay particular attention:
- When motorcycles are present and when there are vehicles staggered across the traffic lane.
  - When entering a tunnel or crossing a bridge.

- !** If any of the following malfunctions occurs, do not use the system:
- Following an impact on the windscreen close to the camera or on the front bumper (versions with radar).
  - Brake lamps not working.

- !** If the vehicle has undergone any of the following modifications, do not use the system:
- Carrying long objects on roof bars.
  - Towing.
  - Use of the "space-saver" type spare wheel (depending on version).
  - Front end of the vehicle modified (for example by adding long-range headlamps or painting the front bumper).
  - Obstructed radar.

## Malfunction



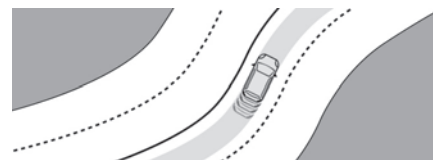
In the event of a malfunction, dashes are displayed instead of the speed setting.



This warning lamp comes on, accompanied by a message and an audible signal, to confirm the malfunction. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Lane positioning assist

**!** For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**



The system identifies the edges of the traffic lane and steers the vehicle to keep it inside this lane and maintain the lateral position chosen by the driver.

To do this, the system uses a camera placed on the upper part of the windscreen.

This system is particularly suited to driving on motorways and main roads.

## Operating conditions

- Adaptive cruise control active.
- Vehicle speed above 19 mph (30 km/h).
- Traffic lane marked out by lines on both sides.
- ESC system operational.
- ASR/CDS systems activated.
- No trailer detected.
- No 'space-saver' spare wheel in use.
- Vehicle not subject to strong lateral acceleration.
- Direction indicators off upon activation of the system.

## Activation/Deactivation



► With Adaptive cruise control with Stop&Go function activated, press this button.

The action is confirmed by:

- The indicator lamp in the button lighting up green.
- The following symbol being displayed on the instrument panel.

The colour of the symbol on the instrument panel depends on the operating status of the system:



(green colour)

One or more operating conditions is not met; the system is paused.



(green colour)

All operating conditions are met; the system is active.



(orange colour)

System malfunction.

If the driver no longer wishes to use the system for a while, they can deactivate it by pressing the button again.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off and the symbol disappears from the instrument panel.



The system status is saved when the ignition is switched off.

## Cruise control

The driver must hold the steering wheel properly. When cruise control is activated, the symbol is displayed in green: by small steering actions, the system directs the vehicle and keeps it in the position chosen by the driver, in the traffic lane. This position is not necessarily the centre of the lane.

The driver can feel movements in the steering wheel.

The driver can change the position of the vehicle at any time, by turning the steering wheel, which suspends the function. The driver positions the vehicle where they wish to in the lane. When the driver feels that the vehicle's position is appropriate, they maintain it until the function

is reactivated. The system regains control by regulating on the new defined position.

## Pausing/Suspending the system



The driver must act promptly if they believe that the traffic conditions or the state of the road surface require their intervention, by moving the steering wheel to temporarily suspend system operation. Any intervention on the brake pedal that causes the Adaptive cruise control to pause will also cause the system to pause.



If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough, it triggers a series of gradual alerts and then deactivates itself if there is no response from the driver.



If the function is suspended due to the prolonged release of the force holding the steering wheel, the function must be reactivated by pressing the button again.

### Automatic pause

- Triggering of the ESC.
- Prolonged failure to detect one of the lane limit markings. In this case, the Active lane departure warning system function can take over, and the

system will reactivate itself once the operating conditions are met again.

### In response to action by the driver: suspension

– Activation of the direction indicators.

- Travelling outside the lane limits.
- Too tight a grip on the steering wheel or dynamic action on the steering wheel.
- Action on the brake pedal (resulting in a pause until cruise control is reactivated) or accelerator


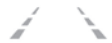






pedal (suspension for as long as the pedal is depressed).







- Pausing of Adaptive cruise control.
- Deactivation of the DSC/ASR systems.

## Driving situations and related alerts

The tables below describe the displays associated with the main driving situations.

The actual order of display of these alerts may be different.

Button indicator lamp	Cruise control thumbwheel	Symbols	Display	Comments
Off	<b>CRUISE</b>	 (grey)	 (grey)	Cruise paused. Lane positioning assist not activated.
Off	<b>CRUISE</b>	 (green)	 (grey)	Active cruise control. Lane positioning assist not activated.
Green	<b>CRUISE</b>	 (green)	 (green)	Highway Driver Assist activated. The system is operating normally (correction is made at the steering wheel).
Green	<b>CRUISE</b>	 (grey)	 (grey)	Highway Driver Assist paused.

Button indicator lamp	Cruise control thumbwheel	Symbols	Display	Comments
Green	<b>CRUISE</b>	 (green)/(grey)	 (grey)	Highway Driver Assist activated. All the operating conditions for lane positioning assist have not been met.
Green	<b>OFF</b> or <b>LIMIT</b>	 (grey)	 (grey)	Cruise control deactivated. All the operating conditions for lane positioning assist have not been met.
Green	<b>CRUISE</b>	 (green)/(grey)	 (grey)	Highway Driver Assist suspended. Cruise control and lane positioning assist are suspended.

Messages	Driving situations
"Activate cruise control to use lane positioning assist"	Activation of lane positioning assist while cruise control is not active.
"Conditions unsuitable - Awaiting activation"	Activation of lane positioning assist while not all conditions are met.
"Keep your hands on the steering wheel"	Prolonged driving without holding the steering wheel, holding it improperly or without applying any force.
"Hold the steering wheel"	Actual or imminent loss of lane positioning assist.
"Take back control"	Simultaneous loss of cruise control and lane positioning assist.

## Operating limits

**i** The system may issue an alert when the vehicle is travelling on a long, straight road with smooth road surface even if the

driver thinks they are holding the steering wheel correctly.

The system may not operate or may produce unsuitable corrections to the steering in the following situations:

- Poor visibility (insufficient road lighting, snowfall, rain, fog).
- Dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a wet road surface, leaving a tunnel, alternating light and shade).



- Windscreen area in front of the camera dirty, misted up, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker.
- Lane markings eroded, partially hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, surface joints).
- Travelling in a tight bend.
- Winding roads.
- Presence of a tarmac joint on the road.

### Risk of undesirable operation

- ! The system should be deactivated in the following situations:
  - Driving with a "space-saver" type spare wheel.
  - When towing or with a bicycle carrier attached to a towing device, particularly when a trailer is not connected or the trailer is not an approved type.
  - Adverse weather conditions.
  - Driving on slippery road surfaces (risk of aquaplaning, snow, ice).
  - In roadworks or toll booth areas.
  - Driving on racing circuits.
  - Driving on a rolling road.

### Malfunction



In the event of a malfunction, the Service warning lamp comes on and this (orange) symbol appears on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Active Safety Brake with Collision Risk Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance

- ! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**



This system:

- warns the driver that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the preceding vehicle, a pedestrian or a cyclist.
- reduces the vehicle's speed to avoid a collision or to limit its severity.

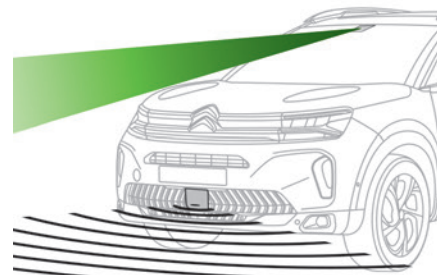
- i The speed will be reduced by a maximum of 16 mph (25 km/h) (versions with camera only) or by a maximum of 31 mph (50 km/h) (versions with camera and radar).

- i The system also takes motorcyclists into account.

It may also react on animals. Animals (especially animals smaller than 0.5 m) and objects on the road are not necessarily detected.

This system includes three functions:

- Collision Risk Alert.
- Intelligent emergency braking assistance (iEBA).
- Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).



The vehicle has a multifunction camera located at the top of the windscreen and, depending on version, a radar located in the front bumper.

- ! This system does not replace the need for driver vigilance.

This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety.

It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor traffic conditions in accordance with applicable driving regulations.

**i** As soon as the system detects a potential collision, it prepares the braking circuit. This may cause a slight noise and a slight sensation of deceleration.

## Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.



The settings are changed via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.



Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

## Operating conditions and limits

Vehicle moving forward without trailer.

Vehicle speed below 87 mph (140 km/h).

Brake system operational.

DSC/ASR systems activated.

Seat belts fastened for all passengers.

Stabilised speed on roads with no or low curvature.



This warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel without any additional message, to indicate that the automatic braking system is not available.

This is a normal behavior indicating that a condition is not fulfilled and which does not request the support of a workshop. In any situations with ignition on where automatic braking presents a risk, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is recommended, for instance:

- Towing a trailer (particularly a trailer without its own braking system).

- Carrying long objects on roof bars.
- Driving with snow chains.
- Using an automatic car wash.
- Performing any maintenance (e.g. changing a wheel, working inside the engine compartment).
- Placing the vehicle on a rolling bench in a workshop.
- Towing the vehicle.
- Following a front bumper deformation (version with radar).
- Following a damage of the windscreen close to the detection camera.

**i** The system is automatically deactivated when the use of certain types of "space-saver" spare wheel (smaller diameter) is detected, or if a fault with the brake pedal switch or at least two brake lamps is detected. Following a severe crash (e.g. with airbag deployment), the system is automatically deactivated. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** In case the detection is degraded or temporarily unavailable by environment conditions, then a driver indication is not displayed (because a driver action is not requested).



It can be dangerous to drive if the brake lamps are not in perfect working order.



The driver must not overload the vehicle (keep within the GVW limit and load height limits for roof bars).

## Collision Risk Alert

This function warns the driver that their vehicle is at risk of a collision with the vehicle in front, or with a pedestrian or cyclist present in their traffic lane.

### Modifying the alert trigger threshold

This trigger threshold determines the sensitivity with which the function warns of the risk of collision.



The threshold is set via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

► Select one of the three pre-defined thresholds: "**Far**", "**Normal**" or "**Close**". The last threshold selected is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

## Operation

Depending on the collision risk detected by the system and the alert trigger threshold chosen by the driver, different levels of alert may be triggered and displayed on the instrument panel. The system takes into account the vehicle dynamics, the difference speed of the own vehicle and the object identified for the collision risk, and the operation of the vehicle (e.g. actions on the pedals, steering wheel) to trigger the alert at the most relevant moment.



(orange)

**Level 1:** visual alert only, warning that the preceding vehicle is very close.

The message "**Vehicle close**" is displayed.



(red)

**Level 2:** visual and audible alert, warning that a collision is imminent.

The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.

**i** While approaching a vehicle too quickly, the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.

**Important:** the level 1 alert depends on the trigger threshold selected. It reacts only on moving vehicles. It is disabled automatically at lower speed.

**!** It is possible that collision warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified.

The driver must always stay in control of the vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

## Intelligent emergency braking assistance (iEBA)

This function increases vehicle deceleration if the driver does not brake enough to avoid a collision.

This assistance is only provided if the driver presses the brake pedal.

## Active Safety Brake



This function, also called "automatic emergency braking", intervenes after the acoustic alert if the driver does not operate the brake pedal quickly enough.

The system aims at reducing the speed of impact or avoiding a collision if the driver fails to react.


**i** The speed will be reduced by a maximum of 16 mph (25 km/h) (versions with camera only) or by a maximum of 31 mph (50 km/h) (versions with camera and radar).

## Operation


The system operates subject to the following conditions:


- At reduced speed in an urban environment, when a stationary vehicle, pedestrian or cyclist is detected.

- The vehicle's speed is above 6 mph (10 km/h) (versions with camera and radar) or between 6 mph and 53 mph (10 km/h and 85 km/h) (versions with camera only) when a moving vehicle is detected.

 This warning lamp flashes (for approximately 10 seconds) as soon as the function applies the vehicle's brakes. During the flashing time, the function is not available.


With an automatic gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking, keep the brake pedal depressed, also after a complete stop is reached, to prevent the vehicle from rolling away. With a manual gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking bringing the vehicle to a complete stop, the engine may stall.

 The driver can override the automatic emergency braking at any time by firmly turning the steering wheel and/or firmly depressing the accelerator pedal.

 The brake pedal may feel hard and vibrate slightly while the function is operating.


If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

## Malfunction



 This warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel with the message "**Sensor blind**" in certain cases.

**Version with camera only:** the system is deactivated.

**Version with camera and radar:** the system may continue to operate in a degraded mode. This may be caused by a reduced visibility (e.g. rain, fog, snow, blinding by low sun) or by a real sensor blockage. In this case, stop the vehicle and verify if the front camera or the front radar is covered by dirt, snow, ice or anything preventing the sensing.


 In the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.


  These warning lamps light up on the instrument panel and/or in the warning lamp display for seat belts and front passenger airbag to indicate that the driver's and/or front passenger's seat belt is not fastened

(depending on version). The automatic braking system is deactivated until the seat belts are fastened.

## Distraction detection

 For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

The function comprises the "Coffee Break Alert" system combined with the "Driver Attention Warning" system.

 These systems are in no way designed to keep the driver awake or to prevent the driver from falling asleep at the wheel. It is the driver's responsibility to stop if feeling tired. Take a break if you are feeling tired or at least every 2 hours.

## Activation/Deactivation



This function is set via the touch screen **Driving/Vehicle** menu.

The state of the system is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

## Coffee Break Alert



The system triggers an alert when it detects that the driver has not taken a

break after two hours of driving at a speed above 43 mph (70 km/h).

This alert is issued via the display of a message encouraging the driver to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal.

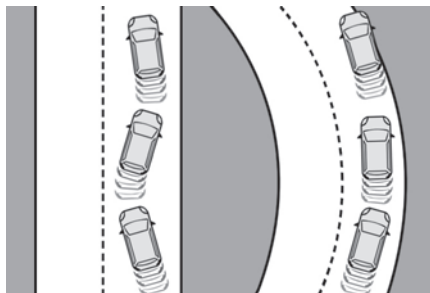
If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.

The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:

- With the engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes.
- The ignition has been switched off for a few minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is opened.

- i** As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 43 mph (70 km/h), the system goes into standby. Driving time starts being counted again once the speed reaches above 43 mph (70 km/h).

## Driver Attention Warning



The system assesses the driver's level of alertness, fatigue and distraction by identifying trajectory changes in relation to the lane markings.

To do this, the system uses a camera, placed on the upper part of the windscreen.

This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed higher than 43 mph (70 km/h)).

At a first alert level, the driver is warned by the message "**Be vigilant!**", accompanied by an audible signal.

After three first-level alerts, the system triggers a further alert with the message "**Dangerous driving: take a break!**", accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

- i** In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

**!** The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:

- lane markings absent, worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks);
- close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected);
- roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

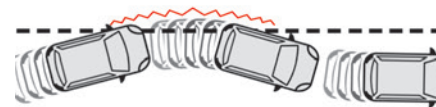
## Active lane departure warning system

**!** For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**

The system corrects the vehicle's trajectory by alerting the driver as soon as it detects a risk of involuntary lane departure or crossing of a verge or hard shoulder (depending on version).

To do this, the system uses a camera, placed on the upper part of the windscreen, identifying the lane markings on the ground and the side of the road (depending on version).

**This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.**



## Operating conditions

- Vehicle speed between 43 and 112 mph (70 and 180 km/h).
- Road marked with a central dividing line.
- Steering wheel held with both hands.
- Direction indicators off upon activation of the system.
- ESC system activated and operational.

**!** The system helps the driver only if there is a risk of the vehicle unintentionally wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, vehicle speed or braking.

The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands so that they can maintain control when the conditions no longer allow the system to intervene (e.g. in the event that the central dividing line marking on the road surface disappears).

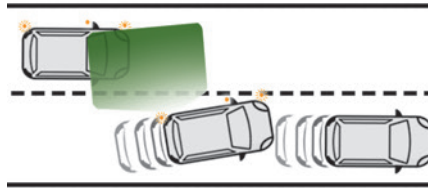
## Operation

Once the system identifies a risk of the vehicle involuntarily crossing one of the lane markings detected, it makes the necessary trajectory correction to return the vehicle to its initial path. The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.



This warning lamp flashes during trajectory correction.

**i** The driver can prevent the correction by firmly holding the steering wheel (e.g. during an emergency manoeuvre). The correction is interrupted immediately if the direction indicators are operated.



While the direction indicators are activated and for a few seconds after switching them off, the system considers that a change of trajectory is intentional and no correction is triggered during this period.

However, with the Blind spot monitoring system activated, if the driver is about to change lanes while another vehicle is detected in the blind spots of their vehicle, a trajectory correction is initiated by the system despite the activation of the direction indicators.









For more information on the **Blind spot monitoring** system, refer to the corresponding section.



**!** If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough during an automatic correction of trajectory, it interrupts the correction. An alert is triggered

to encourage the driver to take back control of the vehicle.

## Driving situations and related alerts

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed in different driving situations. The actual order of display of these alerts may be different.

Function status	Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message	Comments
OFF		 (grey)	Function deactivated.
ON		 (grey)	System active, conditions not met: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Speed below 43 mph (70 km/h).</li> <li>– No lane marking recognised.</li> <li>– ASR/DSC systems deactivated or operation of ESC system triggered.</li> <li>– "Sporty" driving.</li> </ul>
ON		 (grey)	Automatic deactivation/standby of the function (e.g. detection of a trailer, use of the "space-saver" type spare wheel supplied with the vehicle).
ON		 (green)	Lane marking detected. Speed above 43 mph (70 km/h).
ON		 (orange)/(green)	The system corrects the trajectory on the side where the risk of unintentional crossing is detected (orange line).

Function status	Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message	Comments
ON		 (orange)/(green) <b>"Put your hands back on the steering wheel"</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– If, during the correction, the system detects that the driver has not held the steering wheel for a few seconds, it stops the correction and returns control to the driver.</li> <li>– During the trajectory correction, the system determines that the correction will not be enough: the driver is warned that they must provide additional trajectory correction. The duration of audible warnings will increase if multiple corrections are performed in quick succession. The warning will become continuous, persisting until the driver responds.</li> </ul> <p>This message may also be displayed with your hands on the steering wheel.</p>

## Operating limits

The system goes into standby automatically in the following cases:

- ESC deactivated or operation triggered.
- Speed below 43 mph (70 km/h) or greater than 112 mph (180 km/h).
- Electrical connection to a trailer.
- Use of a "space-saver" spare wheel detected (as detection is not immediate, deactivation of the system is recommended).
- Dynamic driving style detected, pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal.
- Driving over lane markings.
- Activation of the direction indicators.
- Crossing the inside line on a bend.
- Driving on a tight bend.

– Inactivity by the driver detected during correction.

- !** The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
- Insufficient contrast between the road surface and the verge or hard shoulder (e.g. shade).
  - Lane markings worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.),
  - Close proximity to the vehicle in front (lane markings may not be detected).
  - Roads that are narrow, winding.

## Risk of undesirable operation

The system should be deactivated in the following situations:

- When changing a wheel or working near a wheel.
- Towing or with a bicycle carrier on a towing device, especially with trailer not plugged in or not approved.
- Road in poor condition, unstable or with very poor grip (risk of aquaplaning, snow, ice).
- Adverse weather conditions.
- Driving on racing circuits.
- Driving on a rolling road.



## Deactivation/Activation



► Press this button to deactivate/reactivate the system at any time.



Deactivation is signalled by the lighting of the indicator lamp in the button and this warning lamp on the instrument panel.

The system is **automatically reactivated** every time the ignition is switched on.

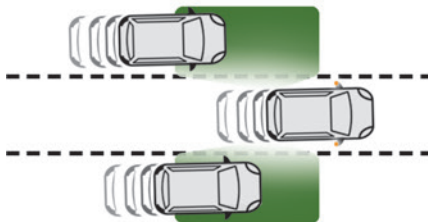
## Malfunction



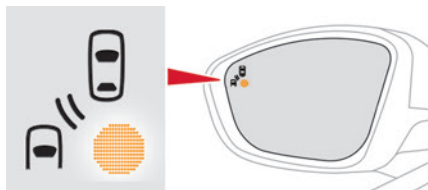
In the event of a malfunction, these warning lamps light up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Blind spot monitoring

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**



This system warns the driver of a potential danger posed by the presence of another vehicle (car, lorry, motorcycle) in the vehicle's blind spots (areas hidden from the driver's field of vision) using sensors located on the sides of the bumpers.



A warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:

- **fixed**, immediately, when being overtaken;
- **flashing**, after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly, and when the direction indicator is used.

## Activation/Deactivation



The settings are changed via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

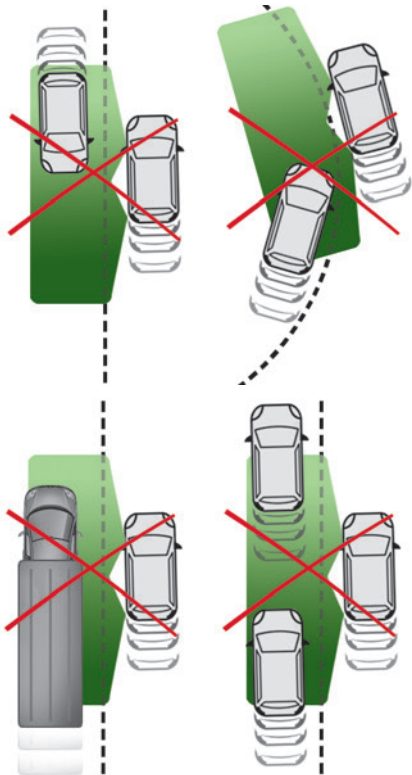
The status of the system is memorised when the ignition is switched off.

i The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towing device approved by CITROËN.

## Operating conditions

- All vehicles are moving in the same direction and in adjacent lanes.
- The speed of your vehicle must be between 7 and 87 mph (12 and 140 km/h).
- When overtaking a vehicle, the speed difference is less than 6 mph (10 km/h).
- When overtaken by a vehicle, the speed difference is less than 16 mph (25 km/h).
- Traffic is flowing normally.
- Overtaking a vehicle over a certain period of time and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- Your vehicle is not pulling a trailer, a caravan, etc.

## Operating limits



No alert is triggered in the following conditions:

- presence of stationary objects (e.g. parked vehicles, safety rails, lampposts, signs).
- vehicles travelling in the opposite direction.
- on winding roads or in case of sharp turns.
- when overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (e.g. truck, bus), which is both detected in a blind spot from behind and present in the driver's field of vision from the front.
- quick overtaking manoeuvre.
- very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object.
- activation of the Park Assist function.

## Malfunction



If the event of a malfunction, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message. Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- ! The system may be temporarily disturbed by certain weather conditions (e.g. rain, hail).

In particular, driving on a wet road or going from a dry to a wet area can cause false alerts (e.g. presence of a cloud of water droplets in the blind spot interpreted as a vehicle).

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow. Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors, or the detection zones on

the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper correct operation of the system.

## Active Blind Spot Detection

In addition to the fixed warning lamp in the door mirror on the side in question, a trajectory correction will be felt if you attempt to cross a lane marking with the direction indicator activated, to help you avoid a collision.

This system is a combination of the Active lane departure warning system and Blind spot monitoring functions.

These two functions must be activated and in operation.

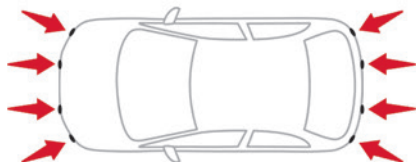
The vehicle speed must be between 43 and 87 mph (70 and 140 km/h).

These functions are especially suitable for driving on motorways and main roads.

For more information on the **Active lane departure warning system** and **Blind spot monitoring**, refer to the corresponding sections.

## Parking sensors

! For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.



This system detects and signals the proximity of obstacles (e.g. pedestrian, vehicle, tree, barrier) using sensors located in the bumper.

## Rear parking sensors

► Engage reverse gear to start the system (confirmed by an audible signal).

The system is switched off when reverse gear is disengaged.

### Audible assistance



The system signals the presence of obstacles within the sensors' detection zone.

The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle.

When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than about thirty

centimetres, the audible signal becomes continuous.

The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) indicates the side on which the obstacle is located.

### Adjusting the audible signal



Depending on version, with CITROËN Connect Radio or CITROËN Connect Nav, pressing this button opens the window for adjusting the volume of the audible signal.

## Visual assistance



This supplements the audible signal by displaying bars on the screen whose location represents the distance between the obstacle and the vehicle (white: more distant, orange: close, red: very close).

When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed on the screen.

## Front parking sensors

Supplementing the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an

obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is below 6 mph (10 km/h).

Front parking sensor operation is suspended if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if an obstacle is no longer detected or the vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) locates the obstacle relative to the vehicle, in front or behind it.

## Deactivation/Activation



The settings are changed via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu.

The status of the function is saved when the ignition is switched off.



The rear parking sensors system will be deactivated automatically if a trailer or bicycle carrier is connected to a towing device installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. In this case, the outline of a trailer is displayed at the rear of the image of the vehicle.

The parking sensors are deactivated while the Park Assist function is measuring a space.

For more information on the **Park Assist** function, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** When starting the vehicle, the graphic and audible aids are only available after the touch screen has started up.

## Operating limits

If the boot is heavily loaded, the vehicle may tilt, affecting distance measurements.

## Malfunction



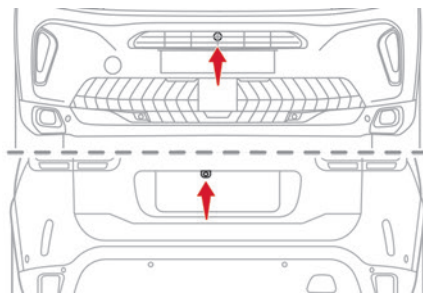
In the event of a malfunction when changing into reverse gear, one of these warning lamps lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal (short beep).

If the malfunction occurs while the parking sensors are being used, it causes the function to deactivate.

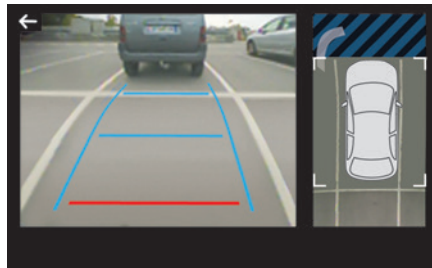
Have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Top Rear Vision - Top 360 Vision

**!** For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids.**



With the engine running, these systems allow views of your vehicle's close surroundings to be displayed on the touch screen using one camera for Top Rear Vision and two cameras for 360 vision.



The screen is divided into two parts with a contextual view and a view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings. The parking sensors supplement the information on the view from above the vehicle.

Various contextual views may be displayed:

- Standard view.
- 180° view.
- Zoom view.

AUTO mode is activated by default.

In this mode, the system chooses the best view to display (standard or zoom).

You can change the type of view at any time during a manoeuvre.

► Press the button in the bottom left-hand corner of the touch screen.

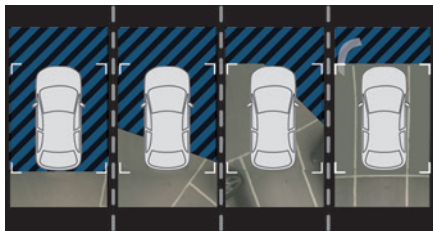
► Select the type of view:

- "Standard view".
- "180° view".
- "Zoom view".
- "AUTO view".

The display is immediately updated with the type of view selected.

The system status is not saved when the ignition is switched off.

## Operating principle



Using one or two cameras, the close surroundings of the vehicle are recorded whilst manoeuvring at low speed.

An image from above your vehicle in its close surroundings is reconstructed (represented between the brackets) in real time and as the manoeuvre progresses.

It facilitates the alignment of your vehicle when parking and allows obstacles close to the vehicle to be seen. It is automatically deleted if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.

With 360 vision, the image is created using both cameras, when going forward and when reversing.

When the function is activated, it is possible that the view from above is not displayed. If the system is activated when the vehicle has already moved, the view from above can be fully displayed.

## Top Rear Vision

### Rear view

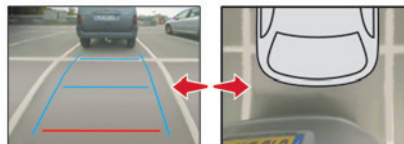


To activate the camera located near the number plate lamps, engage reverse gear and do not exceed a speed of 6 mph (10 km/h).

The system is deactivated:

- Automatically, at speeds above approximately 6 mph (10 km/h),
- Automatically, if the tailgate is opened.
- Upon changing out of reverse gear (the image remains displayed for 7 seconds).
- By pressing the white arrow in the upper-left corner of the touch screen.

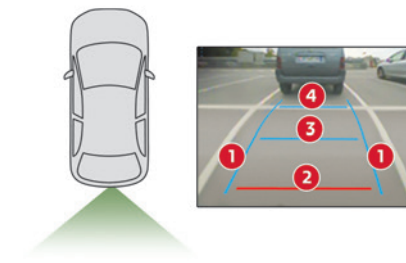
### AUTO mode



This mode is activated by default.

Using sensors in the rear bumper, the automatic view changes from the rear view (standard) to the view from above (zoom) as an obstacle is approached at the level of the red line (less than 30 cm) during a manoeuvre.

### Standard view



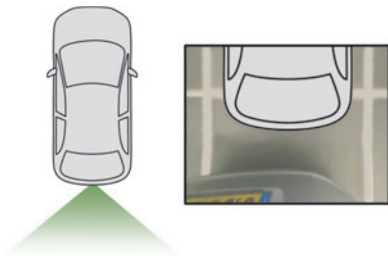
The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.

The blue lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes according to the position of the steering wheel.

The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear bumper; the two blue lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.

This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

## Zoom view



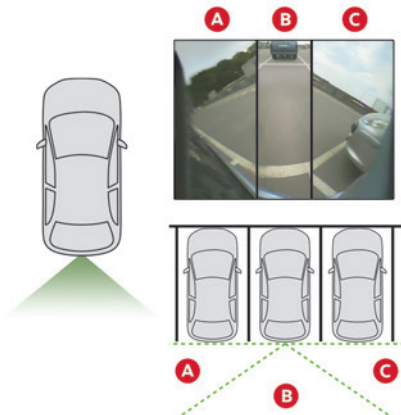
The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around nearby obstacles. This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

**i** Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

It is important to monitor the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.

Parking sensors also provide additional information about the area around the vehicle.

## 180° view



The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking space, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists. This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre. It features 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**. This view is only available via the view selection menu.

## Top 360 Vision

The vehicle has a camera at the front, fitted in the grille, and a camera at the rear, located close to the number plate lamps.

Using these cameras, the system displays the vehicle's near surroundings on the touch screen,

offering views from the rear of the vehicle (rear vision) when reverse gear is engaged and views from the front of the vehicle (front vision) when the gearbox is in neutral or a gear is engaged.

## Rear vision



The system activates automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

The system is deactivated:

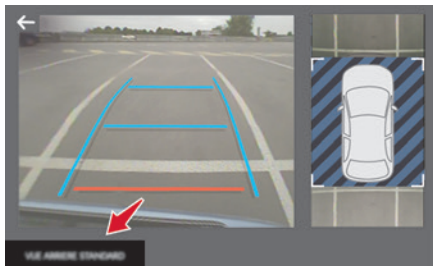
- Automatically, at speeds above approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).
- When shifting out of reverse (the front vision image replaces the rear vision image for 7 seconds).
- By pressing the white arrow in the upper-left corner of the touch screen.

**i** If a trailer or a bicycle carrier is fitted to the towball, the area behind the vehicle on the view from above goes dark. The surroundings are reconstructed by the front camera only.

The rear vision views are similar to those for the Top Rear Vision function.

For more information on the **Top Rear Vision** function, refer to the corresponding section.

## Front and rear vision



With the engine running and the speed below 12 mph (20 km/h), the system is activated via the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu:

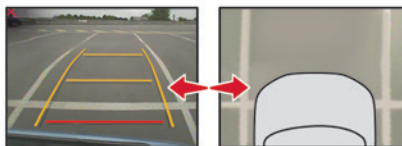
▶ Select "**Visual parking assistance**".

AUTO mode is displayed by default, with front vision, if the gearbox is in neutral or with a gear engaged, or with rear vision, if reverse is engaged.

The system is deactivated:

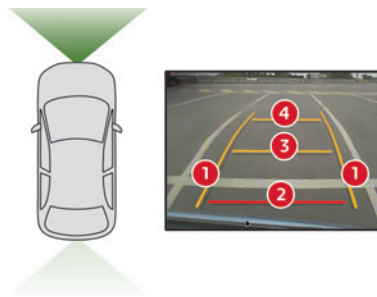
- Automatically above about 19 mph (30 km/h) (the image disappears temporarily from 12 mph (20 km/h)).
- By pressing the white arrow in the upper-left corner of the touch screen.

## AUTO mode



This mode is activated by default. Using sensors in the front bumper, the automatic view changes from the front view (standard) to the view from above (zoom) as an obstacle is approached during a manoeuvre.

## Standard view

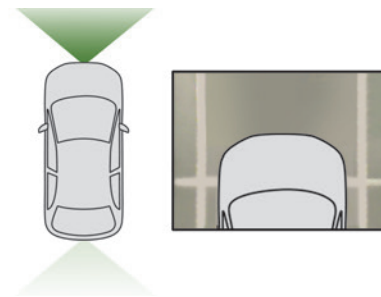


The area in front of your vehicle is displayed on the screen.

The orange lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes according to the position of the steering wheel.

The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the front bumper; the two orange lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively. This view is available with AUTO mode or by selecting it in the view change menu.

## Zoom view



The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the front of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby. This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

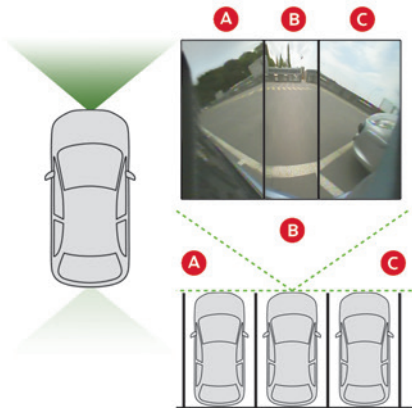
**i** Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are.

It is important to check the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.

The parking sensors also supplement the information on the vehicle's surroundings.



## 180° view



The 180° view assists with exiting from a parking space in forward gear, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists.

This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.

It consists of 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**.

This view is available only from the view selection menu.

## Park Assist

**!** For more information, refer to the **General recommendations on the use of driving and manoeuvring aids**.

This system provides active parking assistance: it detects a parking space then operates the steering system to park in this space. With **manual and automatic gearboxes**, the driver manages the accelerator, brakes and forward and reverse gear engagement. During phases of entry into and exit from a parking space, the system provides visual and audible information to the driver in order to make the manoeuvres safe. Several forward and reverse manoeuvres may be required. At any time, the driver can take back control by holding the steering wheel.



The Park Assist system provides assistance for the following manoeuvres:

- A.** Entry into a "parallel" parking space
- B.** Exit from a "parallel" parking space
- C.** Entry into a "bay" parking space

**i** The Park Assist system cannot operate with the engine switched off. When Park Assist is activated, it prevents Stop & Start from going into STOP mode. In STOP mode, activation of Park Assist restarts the engine.

**i** The Park Assist system takes control of the steering for a maximum of 4 manoeuvring cycles. It is deactivated after these 4 cycles. If the vehicle is not positioned correctly, take back control to complete the manoeuvre.

**!** The sequence of manoeuvres and the driving instructions are displayed on the touch screen.

**AUTO** The assistance is activated: the display of this symbol and a speed limit indicate that the steering manoeuvres are controlled by the system: do not touch the steering wheel.

**OFF** The assistance is deactivated: the display of this symbol indicates that the steering manoeuvres are no longer controlled by the system: take over the steering.

**!** Activation of Park Assist deactivates the Blind spot monitoring.

**i** The Parking sensors function is not available during parking space



measurement. It intervenes later when manoeuvring to warn that the vehicle is approaching an obstacle: the audible signal becomes continuous when the obstacle is less than 30 centimetres away.

If the Parking sensors function has been deactivated, it will be automatically reactivated during the assisted manoeuvring phases.

**i** During parking and exit from parking manoeuvres, the Top Rear Vision - Top 360 Vision functions may come into operation. They allow better monitoring of the surroundings of the vehicle, by displaying additional information in the touch screen. For more information on the **Top Rear Vision - Top 360 Vision** functions, refer to the corresponding section.

**!** In some circumstances, the sensors may not detect small obstacles located in their blind spots. Any object exceeding the size of the vehicle (e.g. roof ladder, towball) is not taken into account by the Park Assist during a manoeuvre.

**!** Always check the surroundings of the vehicle before starting a manoeuvre. If the lateral distance between the vehicle and the space is too great, the system may not be able to measure the space.

**!** During manoeuvring phases, the steering wheel performs rapid turns: do not hold the steering wheel or put your hands between the spokes of the steering wheel. Beware of any object likely to block the manoeuvre (e.g. loose clothing, scarves, ties) - risk of injury!

## Assistance with "parallel" parking manoeuvres



▶ When parking, select "**Park Assist**" in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu to activate the function.



With a digital instrument panel, this indicator lamp lights up on the instrument panel to confirm the activation of the function.



▶ Limit the vehicle speed to a maximum of 12 mph (20 km/h) and select "**Enter parallel parking space**" on the touch screen.

**i** To enter a "parallel" parking space, the system does not identify spaces that are clearly smaller or larger than the vehicle.



▶ Operate the direction indicator on the side you have chosen to park in order to

activate the measurement function. The vehicle must drive at a distance of between 0.5 m and 1.5 m from the row of parked vehicles.



▶ Drive at a speed below 12 mph (20 km/h) following the instructions until the system finds an available space.



▶ Move forwards slowly until a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, asking you to engage reverse gear.



▶ Engage reverse gear, release the steering wheel and move without exceeding a speed of 4 mph (7 km/h).



The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress.



▶ Without exceeding 5 mph (7 km/h), move forwards and backwards, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the end of the manoeuvre is indicated.




▶ At the end of the manoeuvre, the indicator lamp on the instrument panel goes off, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.


Parking assistance is deactivated: you can take over the controls again.


## Assistance with "bay" parking manoeuvres





▶ When parking, select "**Park Assist**" in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu to activate the function.


 With a digital instrument panel, this indicator lamp lights up on the instrument panel to confirm the activation of the function.


 ▶ Limit the vehicle speed to a maximum of 12 mph (20 km/h) and select **"Enter bay parking space"** on the touch screen.


 ▶ Operate the direction indicator on the parking side chosen to activate the measurement function. The vehicle should drive at a distance of between 0.5 m and 1.5 m from the row of parked vehicles.


 ▶ Drive at a speed below 12 mph (20 km/h) following the instructions until the system finds an available space.


 When several successive spaces are found, the vehicle will be directed towards the last one.

 ▶ Move forwards slowly until a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, asking you to engage reverse gear.

 ▶ Engage reverse gear, release the steering wheel and move without exceeding the speed of 5 mph (7 km/h).


 The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress.

 ▶ Without exceeding 5 mph (7 km/h), follow the instructions and the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the end of the manoeuvre is indicated.

 At the end of the manoeuvre, the indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off,


accompanied by a message and an audible signal.


The system is deactivated: it is possible to retake control.

 During a "bay" parking manoeuvre, the Park Assist system is automatically deactivated once the rear of the vehicle is within 50 cm of an obstacle.


## Assistance with "parallel parking exit manoeuvres



▶ To leave a "parallel" parking space, switch the engine on.


 ▶ With the vehicle stationary, select **"Park Assist"** in the **Driving/Vehicle** touch screen menu to activate the function.


 With a digital instrument panel, this indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel to confirm the activation of the function.

 ▶ Press **"Exit parking slot"** on the touch screen.

 ▶ Operate the direction indicator for the exit side chosen.


  ▶ Engage reverse or forward gear and release the steering wheel.

 The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress.

 ▶ Without exceeding 3 mph (5 km/h), move forwards and backwards, aided by

the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the end of the manoeuvre is indicated.

The manoeuvre is complete when the vehicle's front wheels are clear of the parking space.

 At the end of the manoeuvre, the indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

The system is deactivated: it is possible to retake control.

## Deactivation


The system is deactivated via the **Driving / Vehicle** touch screen menu.

The system is automatically deactivated:

- when the ignition is switched off.
- if the engine stalls.
- if the driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- on opening the driver's door.
- if no manoeuvre is performed within 5 minutes of selecting the type of manoeuvre.
- after a prolonged stop of the vehicle during a manoeuvre.
- if the wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) is triggered.
- if the speed of the vehicle is above 43 mph (70 km/h).
- when the driver interrupts the rotation of the steering wheel.
- after 4 manoeuvring cycles.
- if one of the front wheels encounters an obstacle.
- when towing a trailer, connected electrically.


The indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off and a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal.

The driver should then take back control of the vehicle's steering.

 If the system is deactivated during a manoeuvre, the driver should reactivate it to repeat the measurement.


To switch the system off for a prolonged period, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.


## Malfunctions

 When the function is not activated, this indicator lamp (on a vehicle with a type 2 instrument panel) will flash briefly and/or an audible signal will be emitted to indicate a system malfunction.

If the malfunction occurs while the system is in use, the indicator lamp goes off.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

 In the event of a power steering malfunction, this warning lamp is displayed on the instrument panel, accompanied by a warning message.

 **You must stop the vehicle.**  
Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition.  
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

CITROËN prefers TotalEnergies



# FILL UP WITH CONFIDENCE WITH QUARTZ LUBRICANTS

Partners for more than 50 years, Citroën & TotalEnergies share common values: technology, creativity, innovation. TotalEnergies equips Citroën vehicles with **Quartz lubricants** from their first filling in the factory to approved maintenance networks to guarantee them optimal performance on a daily basis. Especially designed for Citroën vehicles, Quartz lubricants make them even more powerful, more fuel efficient and more environmentally friendly. For your car maintenance, fill up with confidence with Quartz lubricants!

**Keep your engine younger for longer!**

**Quartz Ineo Xtra First 0W-20** is a very high performance lubricant resulting from the joint work of the Citroën and TotalEnergies R&D teams. Its innovative technology extends your engine's life while reaching significant fuel savings and thus limiting CO<sub>2</sub> emissions. The product is now available in new packaging\* made of 50% recycled material and 100% recyclable.

## Compatibility of fuels



Petrol fuels conforming to the EN228 standard containing up to 5% and 10% ethanol respectively.



Diesel fuels conforming to the EN590, EN16734 and EN16709 standards and containing up to 7%, 10%, 20% and 30% fatty acid methyl ester respectively. The use of B20 or B30 fuels, even occasionally, imposes special maintenance conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".



Paraffinic Diesel fuel conforming to the EN15940 standard.

**!** The use of any other type of (bio) fuel (e.g. pure or diluted vegetable or animal oils, domestic fuel) is strictly prohibited - risk of damaging the engine and fuel system!

**i** The only fuel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 (Petrol) or B715000 (Diesel) standards.

### Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0 °C (+32 °F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type Diesel

fuels could prevent the engine from operating correctly. In these temperature conditions, use winter-type Diesel fuel and keep the fuel tank more than 50 % full.

At temperatures below -15 °C (+5 °F) to avoid problems starting, it is best to park the vehicle under shelter (heated garage).

### Travelling abroad

**Certain fuels could damage your vehicle's engine.**

**In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.**

For all additional information, consult a dealer.

### Refuelling

**Fuel tank capacity: approximately 53 litres (Petrol or Diesel) or 43 litres (Rechargeable hybrid).**

**Reserve level: approximately 6 litres.**

### Low fuel level



When the low fuel level is reached, this warning lamp lights up on the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. When it first comes on, **about 6 litres** of fuel remain.

Until sufficient fuel is added, this warning lamp appears every time the ignition is switched on, accompanied by the message and the audible

signal. When driving, this message and audible signal are repeated with increasing frequency as the fuel level drops towards **0**.

You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

For more information on **Running out of fuel (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** A small arrow by the warning lamp indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located on.

**! Stop & Start**  
Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition.

### Refuelling

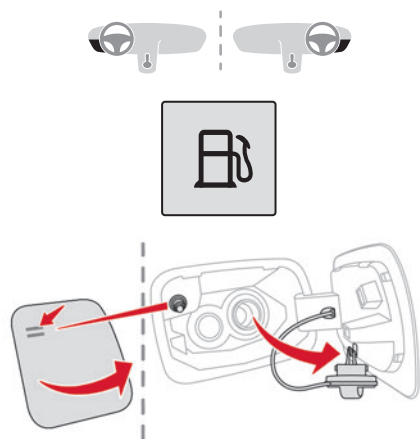
Any addition of fuel must be in quantities of at least 10 litres, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.

Opening the filler flap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This vacuum is entirely normal, resulting from the sealing of the fuel system.

The filler cap is built into the filler flap or must be unscrewed (depending on version).

To refuel in complete safety:

► **Always switch off the engine.**



- ▶ To open the filler flap, press the flap opening button for more than 2 seconds or, with the vehicle unlocked, press the upper rear corner of the filler flap facing the ejector or the tactile marker, if present (depending on version).

#### **i Rechargeable hybrid vehicles**

After pressing the button on the dashboard, the filler flap may not open for several minutes. A sound is emitted when the filler flap opens.

If the flap becomes stuck, press and hold the button on the dashboard for more than 3 seconds.

- ▶ Select a pump that delivers the correct fuel type for the vehicle's engine (see a reminder label on the inside of the filler flap).
- ▶ Turn the filler cap to the left, remove it and place it on its support on the filler flap (depending on version).
- ▶ Insert the filler nozzle and push it in as far as possible before starting to refuel (to minimise the risk of splashing).
- ▶ Fill the tank.

**Do not continue after the nozzle's third cut-out. Doing so may cause malfunctions.**

- ▶ Put the filler cap back in place and turn it to the right (depending on version).
- ▶ Push the fuel filler flap to close it.

The vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.

**For petrol engines, you must use unleaded fuel.**

The filler neck is narrower, allowing only unleaded petrol nozzles to be inserted.

**! If you have put in the wrong fuel for the vehicle, you must have the fuel tank drained and filled with the correct fuel before starting the engine.**

## Misfuel prevention (Diesel)

(Depending on country of sale.)

This mechanical device prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol.

Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device is visible when the filler cap is removed.

### Operation

When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the fuel filler neck of a Diesel vehicle, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling.

**Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.**

**i** The misfuel prevention device does not prevent filling with a jerrycan, regardless of the fuel type.

### **i Travelling abroad**

As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.

Before travelling abroad, it is advisable to check with a CITROËN dealer if the vehicle is suitable for the distribution equipment of the countries visited.

## Rechargeable hybrid system

### Electrical system

The electrical circuit of the rechargeable hybrid system is identified by orange cables and its components are marked with this symbol:



**!** The rechargeable hybrid powertrain uses a voltage of between 240 V and 400 V.

This system may be hot both when the ignition is on and after switching it off. Comply with the warning messages shown on the labels, particularly inside the charging flap.

**!** High voltage system voltage is dangerous and can cause burns or other injuries or even fatal electric shock.

Since damage to high voltage components is not visible, CITROËN recommends that you:

- Never touch the components, damaged or not, and never let your jewelry or other metallic objects come into contact with these components.

- Never work on the orange high voltage cables or on any other high voltage component marked with the Electric risk label. Any intervention on the high voltage system must be carried out by qualified persons in workshops qualified and approved to carry out this type of work.

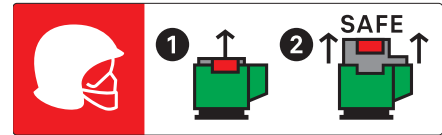
- Never damage, modify or remove the orange high voltage cables or disconnect them from the high voltage network.
- Never open, modify or remove the cover of the traction battery.
- Never work with cutting and forming tools or heat sources near high voltage components and cables.

In case of low level of fluid in the cooling tank, the refilling shall only be performed in a qualified and trained workshop to verify that the leakage is not in the traction battery. Any intervention on the high voltage system must be carried out by qualified persons in workshops qualified and approved to carry out this type of work.

Damage to the vehicle or the traction battery could result in the leakage of toxic gases or fluids either immediately or later. CITROËN recommends that you:

- Always inform the fire and emergency services in the event of an incident, warning that the vehicle is equipped with a traction battery.
- Never touch the liquids leaking from the traction battery.

- Do not inhale the gases emitted by the traction battery which are toxic.
- Move away from the vehicle in the event of incident or accident, the gases emitted being flammable and could cause a fire.



**!** This label is intended solely for use by firefighters and maintenance services in the event of any work on the vehicle. No other person must touch the device shown on this label.

#### **!** In the event of an accident or impact to the vehicle's underbody

In these situations, the electrical circuit or the traction battery can be seriously damaged. Stop as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

#### **!** When washing

Before washing the vehicle, always check that the charging flap is closed correctly. Never wash the vehicle while the battery is on charge.

### ! High-pressure washing

To avoid damaging the electrical components, it is expressly prohibited to use high-pressure washing in the engine compartment or under the body. Do not use a pressure greater than 80 bar when washing the bodywork.

! Never allow water or dust to enter the connector or charging nozzle - risk of electrocution or fire!

Never connect / disconnect the charging nozzle or cable with wet hands - risk of electrocution!

## Traction battery

The Li-ion (Lithium-ion) traction battery stores the electrical energy needed to propel the vehicle.

It is located under the rear seats.

The traction battery's range varies depending on the type of driving, the route, the use of thermal comfort equipment and the ageing of its components.

i The traction battery ageing depends on several factors, such as climatic conditions and the distance travelled.

! To preserve the mileage of your vehicle and the durability of your traction battery, CITROËN recommends that you:

- Do not fully charge the battery of your electric vehicle daily (charge the traction battery below 80% as often as possible).
- Do not completely discharge the battery.
- Do not store the vehicle for a long period of non-use (more than 12 hours) when the traction battery has a low or high charge level. Prefer a charge level between 20 and 40%.
- Limit the use of fast charging.
- Do not expose the vehicle to temperatures below -30°C and above +60°C for more than 24 hours.
- Avoid charging the vehicle at negative temperatures (except if the vehicle ran more than 20 minutes) or above +30°C.
- Do not use the vehicle's traction battery as a generator of energy.
- Do not use a generator to recharge your vehicle's traction battery.

### ! In the event of damage to the traction battery

It is strictly prohibited to work on the vehicle yourself. Do not touch liquids coming from the battery, and in the event of skin contact with these products, wash abundantly with water and contact a doctor as soon as possible. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

## Disposal of the traction battery

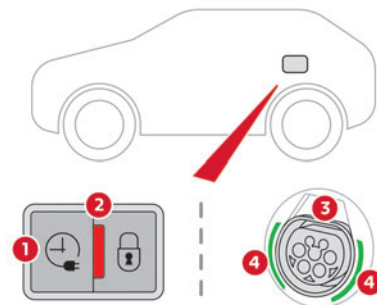
The traction battery is designed for the life of the vehicle if the recommendations of CITROËN are followed.

If it becomes necessary to replace the battery, contact the CITROËN dealer for instructions on its disposal. Improper disposal carries the risk of severe burns, electric shock, and damage to the environment.

In accordance with regulations, CITROËN ensures a second life or recycling of this component in collaboration with qualified operators.

## Charging flap

The charging flap is located on the rear left-hand side of the vehicle.



1. Deferred charging activation button



2. Indicator lamp confirming that the nozzle is locked into the charging connector.  
Fixed red: nozzle correctly positioned and locked.  
Flashing red: nozzle incorrectly positioned or locking not possible.
3. Charging connector
4. Light guides



Status of light guides	Meaning
Fixed white	Welcome lighting when flap is opened
Fixed blue	Deferred charging
Flashing green	Charging
Fixed green	Charging complete

Status of light guides	Meaning
Fixed red	Malfunction

**!** In case of impact, even light, against the charging flap, do not use it.  
Do not dismantle or modify the charging connector - risk of electrocution and/or fire!  
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

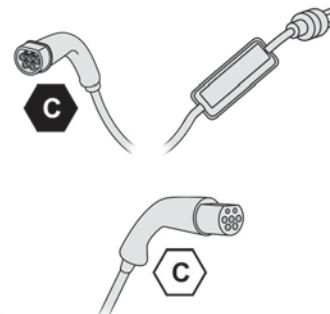
## Charging cables, sockets and chargers

The traction battery can be charged using several different types of cables.  
The charging cable supplied with the vehicle is compatible with the electrical installations of the country of sale. If you are travelling abroad, refer to the following tables to check the compatibility of local electrical installations with the charging cable.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the appropriate charging cable(s).

### Identification labels on charging sockets/connectors

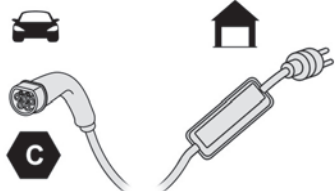

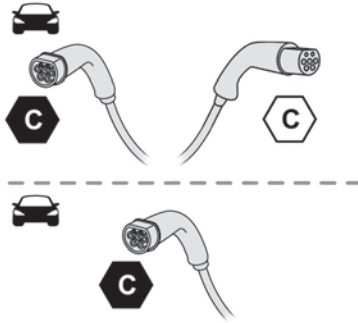
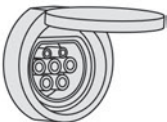

Identification labels are affixed to the vehicle, charging cable and charger to inform the user about which device needs to be used.



The meaning of each identification label is as follows:

Identification label	Location	Configuration	Power type/Voltage range
	Charging connector (vehicle side)	TYPE 2	AC < 480 Vrms
	Charging socket (charger side)	TYPE 2	AC < 480 Vrms






## Types of charging

















Cable type	Compatibility	Specifications
<p><b>Mode 2 charging cable with integrated control unit</b></p>  <p>Identification label <b>C</b> on the charging connector (vehicle side).</p>	<p>Conventional electrical socket (depending on country).</p> 	<p>Charge limited to a maximum of 8 A.</p>
<p><b>Mode 3 charging cable</b></p>  <p>Identification labels <b>C</b> on the charging connector (vehicle side) and on the socket (charger side).</p>	<p>Accelerated charging unit socket.</p>  <p>Wallbox accelerated charging unit.</p> 	<p>Charge limited to a maximum of 32 A.</p>















6. Never attempt to repair or open this charging cable. It contains no repairable parts - replace the charging cable if it is damaged.
7. Never immerse this charging cable in water.
8. Never use this charging cable with an extension cable, a multi-plug socket, a conversion adaptor or on a damaged electrical socket.
9. Do not unplug the plug from the wall as a means of stopping charging.
10. Immediately stop charging, by locking and then unlocking the vehicle using the remote control key, if the charging cable or wall socket feel burning hot to the touch.
11. This charging cable includes components liable to cause electrical arcing or sparks. Do not expose to flammable vapours.
12. Only use this charging cable with CITROËN vehicles.
13. Never plug the cable into the wall socket (or unplug it) with wet hands.
14. Do not force the connector if it is locked into the vehicle.

### Control unit label - State of indicator lamps

	State of the indicator lamp
Off	
On	 
Flashing	 

POWER	CHARGE	FAULT	Symbol	Description
				Not connected to the power supply or power is not available from the infrastructure.
 (green)	 (green)	 (red)		The control unit is currently performing a self-test.
 (green)				Connected only to the infrastructure or to the infrastructure and to the Electric Vehicle (EV) but no charging in progress.
 (green)	 (green)			Connected to the power supply and to the Electric Vehicle (EV). The EV is on charge or in a temperature pre-conditioning sequence.

POWER	CHARGE	FAULT	Symbol	Description
 (green)	 (green)			Connected to the power supply and to the Electric Vehicle (EV). The EV is waiting for charging or the charging of the EV is completed.
		 (red)		Control unit malfunction. No charging allowed. If an error indicator reappears after a manual reset, the control unit must be checked by a CITROËN dealer before the next charge.
 (green)	 (green)	 (red)		The control unit is in diagnostic mode.

### Manual reset procedure

The control unit can be reset by simultaneously disconnecting the charging connector and the wall socket. Then, reconnect the wall socket first. For more information, refer to the handbook.

## Charging the traction battery (Rechargeable hybrid)

For a full charge, follow the charging procedure without interrupting it, until it stops automatically. Charging may be performed either immediately (by default) or deferred.



Deferred charging is set via the touch screen or the **MyCitroën App** application.

When the vehicle is connected, the following information is displayed on the instrument panel:

- Traction battery charge status (%).
  - Remaining range (miles or km).
  - Estimated charging time (calculation may take a few seconds).
  - Charging speed (miles or km gained per hour).
- After the instrument panel has been put into standby mode, this information can be displayed again by unlocking the vehicle or opening a door.

**i** It is also possible to monitor the charging progress using the **MyCitroën App** application.  
For more information on **Remote functions**, refer to the corresponding section.

### **!** Low load / Driving

Driving when the charge level of the traction battery is too low can lead to the vehicle breaking down and can lead to accidents or serious injuries. ALWAYS make

sure the traction battery has a sufficient charge level.

### ! Low load / Parking

If the outside temperature is negative, it is recommended not to park your vehicle outside for several hours at a low load (less than 20%).

### ! Vehicle in storage for more than 1 month

In the event of a long period of non-use of the vehicle (beyond 4 weeks) without the possibility of charging when restarting, the self-discharge may make it impossible to restart if the traction battery charge level is a low or very low, especially at negative ambient temperatures. ALWAYS make sure that the traction battery has a charge between 20% and 40% if you do not plan to use your vehicle for several weeks.

Do not connect the charging cable.

Always park the vehicle in a place with temperatures between -10°C and 30°C (parking in a place with extreme temperatures can damage the traction battery).

Refer to the **Accessory battery (Rechargeable hybrid)** section for the battery disconnection procedure.

## Precautions

Rechargeable hybrid vehicles have been developed in accordance with the recommendations for maximum electromagnetic field limits established by the ICNIRP (International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection - 1998 Guidelines).



Wearers of pacemakers or equivalent devices should consult a doctor to enquire about any applicable precautionary measures, or contact the manufacturer of their implanted electronic medical device to check that it is guaranteed to operate in an environment compliant with the ICNIRP guidelines.

**If in doubt**, during charging, do not remain inside or near the vehicle, near the charging cable or the charging unit, even for a short time.

### ! Before charging

Depending on the context:

- ▶ Have a professional check that the electrical system to be used complies with applicable standards and is compatible with the vehicle.

- ▶ Have a professional electrician install a dedicated domestic power socket or accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) compatible with the vehicle.

Use the charging cable supplied with the vehicle.

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### ! During charging

As a safety measure, the engine will not start if the charging cable is plugged into the connector on the vehicle. A warning is displayed on the instrument panel.

While charging is in progress, unlocking the vehicle will cause the charging to stop.

If no action is taken on one of the openings (door or boot) or on the charging nozzle, the vehicle will lock again after 30 seconds and charging will resume automatically.

Never work under the bonnet:

- Some areas remain very hot, even an hour after charging ends - risk of burns!
- The fan may start at any time - risk of cuts or strangulation!

### ! After charging

Check that the charging flap is closed.

Do not leave the cable connected to the domestic power socket - risk of short-circuit or electrocution in the event of contact with or immersion in water!

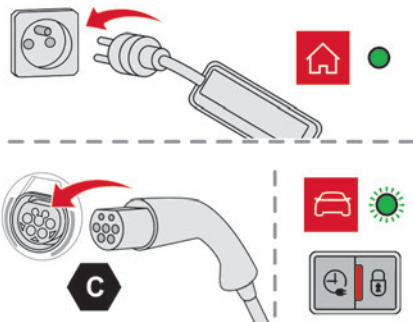
## Charging procedure

### Connection

- ▶ Before charging, check that the gear selector is in mode **P** and the ignition is off, otherwise charging is impossible.

- ▶ Press on the rear of the charging flap to open it and check that there are no foreign bodies on the vehicle's charging connector. The light guides in the flap come on white.

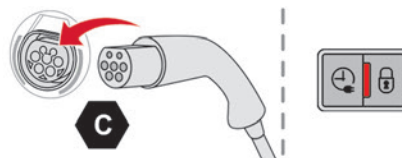
### Domestic charging (mode 2)



- ▶ First, connect the charging cable from the control unit to the domestic socket. When the connection is made, all of the indicator lamps on the control unit light up, then only the **POWER** indicator lamp remains on in green.
- ▶ Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.
- ▶ Insert the nozzle into the vehicle's charging connector. The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing of the green light guides in the flap and the flashing of the **CHARGE** indicator lamp in green on the control unit.

If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure, ensuring that all of the connections are properly established. The red indicator lamp in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

### Accelerated charging (mode 3)



- ▶ Follow the accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) user instructions.
- ▶ Remove the protective cover from the charging nozzle.
- ▶ Insert the nozzle into the vehicle's charging connector. The start of charging is confirmed by the flashing of the green light guides in the flap. If this is not the case, charging has not started; restart the procedure ensuring that all connections are properly established. The red indicator lamp in the flap comes on to indicate that the nozzle is locked.

### Deferred charging

By default, the deferred charging start time is set to midnight. Depending on equipment, this time can be changed.

### Settings

#### With CITROËN Connect Nav



- ▶ In the **Energy** touch screen menu, select the **Charge** page.

- ▶ Set the charging start time.
- ▶ Press **OK**.

The setting is saved in the system.

#### With CITROËN Connect Radio or CITROËN Connect Nav



You can also programme the deferred charging function at any time from a smartphone via the **MyCitroën App** application. For more information on **Remote functions**, refer to the corresponding section.

### Activation

- ▶ After programming the deferred charging, connect the vehicle to the desired charging equipment.
- ▶ Press this button in the flap within one minute to activate the deferred charging (confirmed by the light guides coming on in blue).

### Disconnection



Before disconnecting the nozzle from the charging connector:

- ▶ If the vehicle is locked, unlock it.

- ▶ If the vehicle is unlocked, **lock it and then unlock it**.

**I** If selective unlocking of the doors is activated, press the unlocking button on the remote control twice to disconnect the nozzle.

The red indicator lamp in the flap goes out to confirm that the nozzle is unlocked.

- ▶ Within **30 seconds**, remove the charging nozzle.

### Domestic charging (mode 2)

The end of charging is confirmed when the green **CHARGE** indicator lamp on the control unit comes on fixed and the green light guides in the flap come on fixed.

- ▶ After disconnection, replace the protective cover over the nozzle and close the charging flap.
- ▶ Disconnect the control unit's charging cable from the domestic socket.

### Accelerated charging (mode 3)

The end of charging is confirmed by the accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) and when the green light guides in the flap come on fixed.

- ▶ After disconnection, replace the nozzle on to the charging unit and close the charging flap.

## Towing device

### Load distribution

- ▶ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle, and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it. Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum towable load must be reduced by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude.

**I** Use genuine towing devices and wiring harnesses approved by CITROËN. We recommend having them fitted by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. If not fitted by a CITROËN dealer, they must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.

**Important:** if the vehicle has a motorised tailgate and Hands-Free Tailgate Access function, and a towing device has been fitted outside the CITROËN dealer network, it is essential to visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the detection system recalibrated - risk of malfunction of the Hands-Free Tailgate Access function. Certain driving or manoeuvring aid functions are automatically deactivated while an approved towing system is in use. For more information about driving with a towing device fitted to a trailer and associated with the **Trailer stability assist**, refer to the corresponding section.

**!** Comply with the maximum authorised towable weight, as indicated on your vehicle's registration certificate, on the manufacturer's label and in the **Technical data** section of this guide.

**!** If using accessories attached to the towing device (e.g. bicycle carriers, tow boxes):

- Comply with the maximum authorised nose weight.
- Do not transport more than 4 conventional bicycles or 2 electric bicycles.

When loading bicycles onto a bicycle carrier on a towball, be sure to place the heaviest bicycles as close as possible to the vehicle.

**!** Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.

**!** **Vehicle equipped with motorised tailgate with hands-free function (Hands-Free Tailgate Access)**

To avoid unintentionally opening the motorised tailgate when operating the towing device:

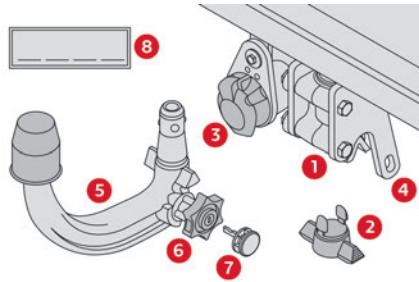
- Deactivate this function in advance in the vehicle's configuration menu.
- Or remove the electronic key from the recognition zone, with the tailgate closed.



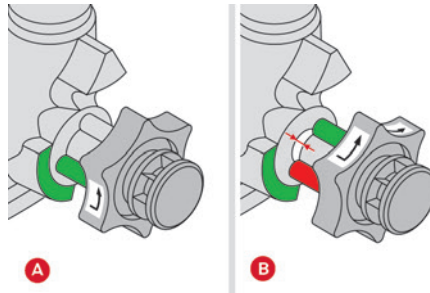
## Towing device with quickly detachable towball

### Presentation

No tools are required to install or remove this genuine towing device.



1. Carrier
2. Protective plug
3. Connection socket
4. Safety eye
5. Detachable towball
6. Locking/unlocking wheel
7. Security key lock
8. Label to note the key references



- A. Locked position** (the **green** marks are opposite each other); the wheel is in contact with the towball (no gap).
- B. Unlocked position** (**red** mark opposite the **green** mark); the wheel is no longer in contact with the towball (gap of around 5 mm).

**i** Affix the enclosed label in a clearly visible location, close to the carrier or in the boot.

**!** Trailers with LED lamps are not compatible with the wiring harness of this device.

**i** To ensure complete safety while driving with a **Towing device**, refer to the corresponding section.

### **!** Before each use

- Verify that the towball is correctly fitted, checking the follow points:
- The green mark on the wheel is in line with the green mark on the towball.
  - The wheel is in contact with the towball (position **A**).
  - The security key lock is closed and the key removed; the wheel can no longer be operated.
  - The towball must not be able to move in its carrier; test by attempting to shake it with your hand.
- If the towball is not locked, the trailer can become detached - risk of an accident!

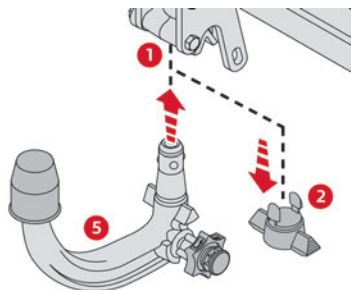
### **!** During use

- Never release the locking system with a trailer or load carrier on the towball. Never exceed the maximum authorised weight for the vehicle - the Gross Train Weight or GTW. Always comply with the maximum authorised load on the towing device: if it is exceeded, this device may become detached from the vehicle - risk of an accident! Before driving, check the headlamp height adjustment and check that the lamps on the trailer operate correctly. For more information on **Headlamp height adjustment**, refer to the corresponding section.

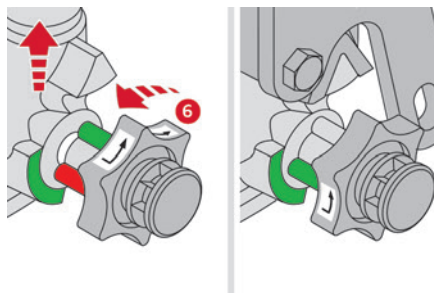
**! After use**

When travelling without a trailer or load carrier, remove the towball and fit the protective plug into the carrier, to provide clear visibility of the number plate and/or its lighting.

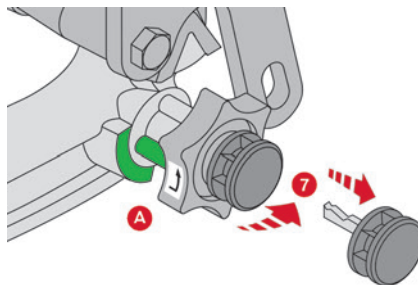
## Fitting the towball



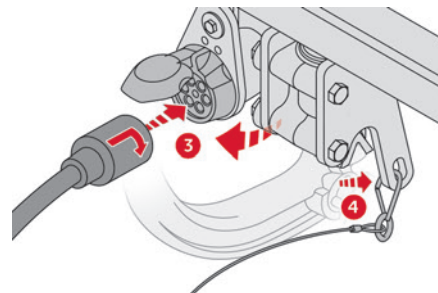
- ▶ Below the rear bumper, remove the protective plug **2** from the carrier **1**.
- ▶ Insert the end of the towball **5** into the carrier **1** and push it upwards; it will lock into position automatically.



- ▶ The wheel **6** rotates a quarter turn anti-clockwise; take care to keep your hands clear!



- ▶ Check that the mechanism has correctly locked into place (position **A**).
- ▶ Close the lock **7** using the key.
- ▶ Remove the key. The key cannot be removed while the lock is open.
- ▶ Clip the cap onto the lock.

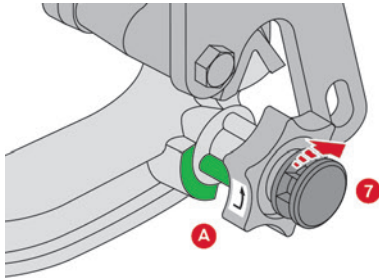


- ▶ Remove the protective cover from the towball.
- ▶ Attach the trailer to the towball.
- ▶ Attach the cable on the trailer to the safety eye **4** on the carrier.
- ▶ Lower the connection socket **3** to put it in position.
- ▶ Insert the trailer plug and rotate it by a quarter turn to connect it to the connection socket **3** on the carrier.

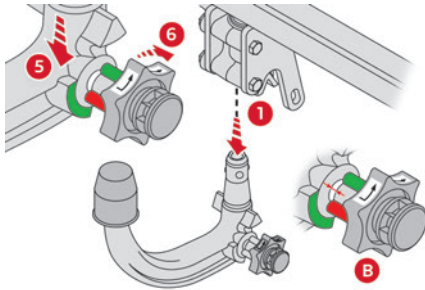
## Removing the towball

- ▶ Grasp the trailer plug, perform a quarter turn and pull to disconnect it from the connection socket **3** on the carrier.
- ▶ Raise the connection socket **3** to the right again to stow it away.
- ▶ Detach the cable on the trailer from the safety eye **4** on the carrier.
- ▶ Detach the trailer from the towball.
- ▶ Refit the protective cover to the towball.

- ▶ Remove the cap from the lock and press it onto the head of the key.

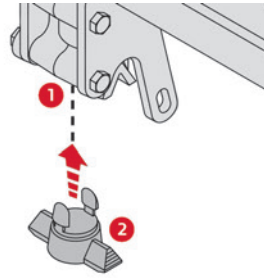


- ▶ Insert the key into the lock 7.
- ▶ Open the lock using the key.



- ▶ Hold the towball 5 firmly in one hand; using the other hand, pull and turn the wheel 6 fully in a clockwise direction; do not release the wheel.
- ▶ Extract the towball from the bottom of its carrier 1.

- ▶ Release the wheel; it automatically stops in the unlocked position (position B).



- ▶ Refit the protective plug 2 to the carrier 1.
- ▶ Stow the towball in its bag away from knocks and dirt.

## Maintenance

Correct operation is only possible if the towball and its carrier are kept clean.

Before cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure jet wash, the towball must be removed and the protective plug fitted to the carrier.

- ▶ Affix the enclosed label in a clearly visible location, close to the carrier or in the boot.
- Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for any work on the towball system.

## Energy economy mode

This system manages the duration of use of certain functions, in order to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery with the ignition off. After switching off the engine, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematic system, the wipers and the dipped beam headlamps or courtesy lamps, for a combined duration of approximately 40 minutes.

### Selecting the mode

A confirmation message is displayed when energy economy mode is entered, and the active functions are placed on standby.

- ▶ If a telephone call is in progress at the time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes via the audio system's hands-free system.

### Exiting the mode

These functions are automatically reactivated the next time the vehicle is used.

To restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:

- For less than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 5 minutes.
- For more than 10 minutes, to use the equipment for approximately 30 minutes.

Let the engine run for the specified duration to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.

To recharge the battery, avoid repeatedly or continuously restarting the engine.

**!** A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.

For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Load reduction mode

This system manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.

When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as the air conditioning and the heated rear screen.

The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

## Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

**!** Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

**i** Observe the legislation in force in your country relating to the use of snow chains and maximum authorised speeds.

Use only chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to the vehicle:

Original tyre size	Maximum link size
215/65 R17	9 mm
225/55 R18	9 mm
235/55 R18	Cannot be fitted with chains
205/55 R19	9 mm
225/50 R19	Cannot be fitted with chains

For more information on snow chains, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Installation tips

- ▶ To fit the snow chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface at the side of the road.
- ▶ Apply the parking brake and position any wheel chocks under the wheels to prevent movement of the vehicle.
- ▶ Fit the snow chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- ▶ Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
- ▶ Stop the vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

**i** It is strongly recommended that you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface before setting off.

**!** Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging the vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

## Very cold climate screen

(Depending on country of sale)

This removable device prevents the accumulation of snow around the radiator cooling fan.

**i** **In case of difficulty with installation/removal**

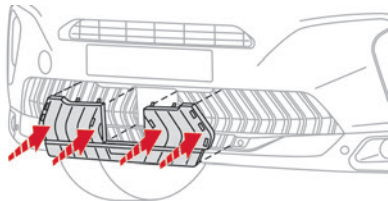
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** Before any operation, ensure that the engine is off and the cooling fan has stopped.

**!** It is essential to remove it when:

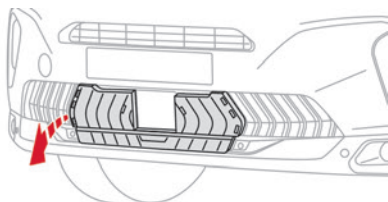
- the outside temperature exceeds 10°C.
- recovery is in progress.
- the speed is above 75 mph (120 km/h).

## Fitting



- ▶ Place the screen against the bumper grille.
- ▶ Clip the screen.
- ▶ Check that the screen is firmly held by pressing around the edges.

## Removing



- ▶ Unclip the screen with your fingers or a tool.

## Roof bars

- ! As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use

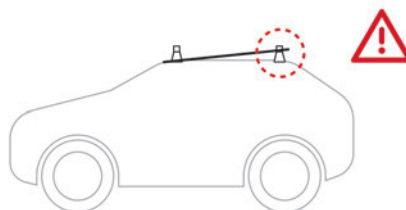
transverse roof bars approved for your vehicle.  
Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

- ! Maximum load distributed over the transverse roof bars, for a loading height not exceeding 40 cm (except bicycle carrier): **75 kg.**

As this value may change, please verify the maximum load quoted in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the vehicle.

Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects that are longer than the vehicle.

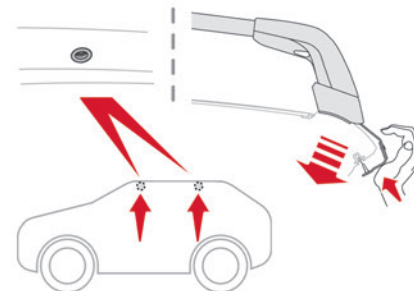


- ! **Sunroof**  
Do not operate the sunroof when using roof bars - risk of major damage!

## ! Recommendations

Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides. Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof. Secure the load firmly. Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and its stability may be affected. Regularly check the security and tight fastening of the roof bars, at least before each trip. Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

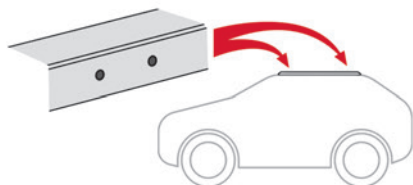
## Direct fitting on roof



The transverse bars must only be fixed at the four anchorage points located on the roof frame. These points are concealed by the vehicle doors when the doors are closed.

The roof bar fixings have a stud which must be inserted into the opening of each anchorage point.

## Fitting on longitudinal bars



The transverse bars must be fixed at the markings located on the longitudinal bars.

## Bonnet

### ! Stop & Start

Before doing anything under the bonnet, you must switch off the ignition to avoid any risk of the engine restarting automatically. Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the cooling fan or in certain moving components - risk of strangulation and serious injury!



### ! Rechargeable hybrid vehicles

Before any work is carried out under the bonnet, it is essential to switch off the ignition and disconnect the charging connector nozzle if it is connected, check that the **READY** indicator lamp is off on the instrument panel and wait 4 minutes - risk of serious injury!



**i** The location of the interior bonnet release lever prevents opening the bonnet when the left-hand front door is closed.

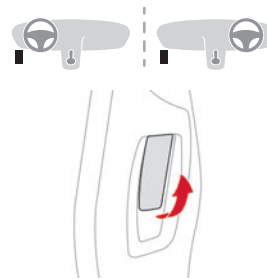
**!** When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the bonnet stay with care (risk of burns), using the protected area.

When the bonnet is open, take care not to damage the safety catch. Do not open the bonnet under very windy conditions.

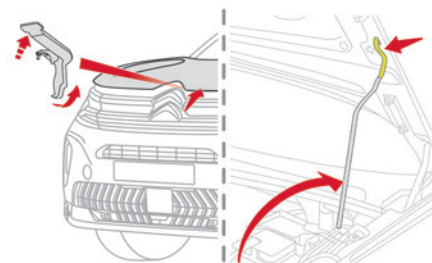
### ! Cooling of the engine when stopped

The engine cooling fan may start after the engine has been switched off. Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the fan!

## Opening



- ▶ Open the left-hand front door.
- ▶ Pull the interior release lever, located at the bottom of the door frame, towards you.



- ▶ Lift the exterior safety catch and raise the bonnet.
- ▶ Unclip the stay from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

## Closing

- ▶ Hold the bonnet and pull out the stay from the support slot.
- ▶ Clip the stay in its housing.
- ▶ Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.
- ▶ Pull on the bonnet to check that it is locked correctly.

**!** Because of the presence of electrical equipment under the bonnet, it is strongly recommended that exposure to water (rain, washing, etc.) be limited.

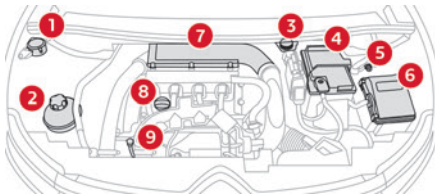
## Engine compartment

The engine shown here is an example for illustrative purposes only.

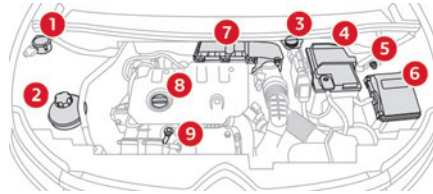
The locations of the following elements may vary:

- Air filter.
- Engine oil dipstick.
- Engine oil filler cap.

### Petrol engine



### Diesel engine



1. Screenwash fluid reservoir
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Battery/Fuses
5. Remote earth point (-)
6. Fusebox
7. Air filter
8. Engine oil filler cap
9. Engine oil dipstick

**!** The Diesel fuel system operates under very high pressure.

All work on this circuit must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Checking levels

Check all of the following levels regularly in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if required, unless otherwise indicated.

If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** The fluids must comply with the manufacturer's requirements and with the vehicle's engine.

**!** Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

## Used products

**!** Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.

Most of these fluids are harmful to health and very corrosive.



Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground. Empty used oil into the containers reserved for this purpose at a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Engine oil



The level is checked, with the engine having been switched off for at least 30 minutes and on level ground, either using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel when the



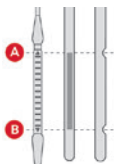
ignition is switched on (for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge), or using the dipstick. It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). It is recommended that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

**!** In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

## Checking using the dipstick

For the location of the dipstick, please refer to the illustration of the corresponding engine compartment.

- ▶ Grasp the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
- ▶ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean, lint-free cloth.



- ▶ Reinsert the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to visually check the oil level: the correct level is between marks **A (max)** and **B (min)**.

### Do not start the engine if the level is:

- above mark **A**: contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

- below mark **B**: top up the engine oil immediately.

### **!** Oil grade

Before topping up or changing the engine oil, check that the oil is suitable for your engine and complies with the recommendations in the service schedule supplied with the vehicle (or available from your CITROËN dealer or qualified workshop). Use of non-recommended oil may invalidate your warranty in the event of engine failure.


## Topping up the engine oil level

For the location of the engine oil filler cap, please refer to the corresponding engine compartment illustration.

- ▶ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).
- ▶ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.
- ▶ Top up the level if necessary.
- ▶ After checking the level, carefully screw the oil filler cap back on and replace the dipstick in its tube.

**i** The oil level indication displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on is not valid for 30 minutes following an addition of oil.


## Brake fluid

 The level of this fluid should be close to the "**MAX**" mark. If not, check the brake pads for wear.

To know how often the brake fluid should be replaced, refer to the manufacturer's servicing schedule.

**!** Clean the cap before removing it to refill. Use only DOT4 brake fluid from a sealed container.

## Engine coolant

 It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.

A level of coolant that is too low risks causing major damage to the engine; the coolant level must be close to the "**MAX**" mark without ever going above it.

If the level is close to or below the "**MIN**" mark, it is essential to top it up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of the coolant is regulated by the fan.

As the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.

In order to avoid the risk of scalding if you need to top up in an emergency, wrap a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.



Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

**!** **Cooling of the engine when stopped**  
**The engine cooling fan may start after the engine has been switched off.**  
**Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the fan!**

## Screenwash fluid



Top up to the required level when necessary.

### Fluid specification

The fluid must be topped up with a pre-mixed product.

In winter (temperatures below zero), a fluid containing an anti-freeze agent which is appropriate for the temperature conditions must be used in order to protect the system's components (pump, tank, ducts, jets).

**!** Filling with pure water is prohibited in all circumstances (risk of freezing, limescale, etc.).

## Diesel fuel additive (Diesel with particle filter)



On reaching the minimum level in the particle filter additive tank, one of these warning lamps comes on fixed,

accompanied by an audible signal and a warning message.

### Topping up

The topping up of this additive must be carried out quickly.  
 Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## AdBlue® (BlueHDi)

An alert is triggered when the reserve level is reached.

For more information on the **Indicators** and in particular the AdBlue range indicators, refer to the corresponding section.

To avoid the vehicle being immobilised in accordance with regulations, you must top up the AdBlue tank.

For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi)**, and in particular the supply of AdBlue, refer to the corresponding section.

## Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.

Otherwise, have them checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** Only use products recommended by CITROËN or products of equivalent quality and specification.  
 In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, CITROËN selects and offers very specific products.

## 12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance.

Check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick-release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

**i** For more information on the precautions to take before any work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

**!** Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery with special technology and specifications.  
 Its replacement should be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Passenger compartment filter



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary.**

**i** A clogged passenger compartment filter can adversely affect air conditioning system performance and generate undesirable odours.

## Air filter



Depending on the environment and the use of the vehicle (e.g. dusty atmosphere, city driving), **change it twice as often, if necessary.**

## Oil filter



Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

## Particle filter (Diesel)



The start of clogging of the particle filter is indicated by the temporary lighting of this warning lamp, accompanied by an alert message.

As soon as traffic conditions allow, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h), with an engine speed above 2,500 rpm, for about 15 minutes (until the warning lamp goes out).

If it is not possible to reach 37 mph (60 km/h), leave the engine running at idle for about 15 minutes, then drive with an engine speed above 2,500 rpm for 15 minutes.

**!** Do not switch off the engine until the filter is fully regenerated; repeated intervals can degrade the engine oil prematurely. Regenerating the filter while the vehicle is stationary is not recommended.

**i** If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low Diesel additive level. For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

**i** Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice water vapour coming from the exhaust while accelerating. These emissions have no impact on the vehicle's behaviour and the environment.

**i** **New vehicle**  
During the first few particle filter regeneration operations, you may notice a "burning" smell. This is perfectly normal.

## Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

## Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

## Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services. Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

**i** After washing the vehicle, moisture, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Gently dab the brakes to dry and defrost them.

## Brake disc wear



For information on checking brake disc wear, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Electric parking brake



This system does not require any routine servicing. However, in the event of a problem, do not hesitate to have the system checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**i** For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Wheels and tyres



The inflation pressure of all tyres, including the spare wheel, must be checked on "cold" tyres.

The pressures indicated on the tyre pressure label are valid for "cold" tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at over 31 mph (50 km/h), add 0.3 bar (30 kPa) to the values indicated on the label.

**!** Under-inflation increases energy consumption. Non-compliant tyre pressures cause tyres to wear prematurely and have an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding - risk of accident!

Driving with worn or damaged tyres reduces the braking and road holding performance of the vehicle. Regularly check the condition of the tyres (tread and sidewalls) and rims as well as the presence of the valve caps.

When the wear indicators no longer appear set back from the tread, the depth of the grooves is less than 1.6 mm; replace the tyres as soon as possible.

Using different size wheels and tyres from those specified can affect the lifetime of tyres, wheel rotation, ground clearance, the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.

Fitting different tyres on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.

Always mark the direction of rotation on the tyres that will be stored when fitting winter or summer tyres. Store them in a cool, dry place and away from direct exposure to the sun's rays.



Winter or 4-seasons tyres can be identified by this symbol on their sidewalls.

## Shock absorbers



It is not easy for drivers to detect when shock absorbers are worn. Nevertheless, the shock absorbers have a major impact on road holding and braking performance. For your safety and driving comfort, it is important to have them regularly checked by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Timing and accessory kits



The timing and accessory kits are used from the time the engine is started until it is switched off. It is normal for them to wear over time.

A faulty timing or accessory kit can damage the engine, rendering it unusable. Observe the recommended replacement frequency, stated in distance travelled or time elapsed, whichever is reached first.

## AdBlue® (BlueHDi)

To respect the environment and ensure compliance with the Euro 6 standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel

consumption of its Diesel engines, CITROËN has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with a system that combines SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a Diesel Particle Filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

## SCR system

Using a liquid called AdBlue® that contains urea, a catalytic converter turns up to 85% of the nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.



The AdBlue® is contained in a **special tank** holding about 17 litres.

Its capacity allows a driving range of approximately 4,000 miles (6,500 km), **which may vary considerably** depending on your driving style.

An alert system is triggered once the reserve level is reached: it is then possible to drive for a further 1,500 miles (2,400 km) before the tank is empty and the vehicle is immobilised.

**i** For more information on the **Warning and indicator lamps** and the associated alerts, or the **Indicators**, please refer to the corresponding sections.

**!** Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a device required by law prevents the engine from being restarted. If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from the vehicle will no longer meet


the Euro 6 standard and the vehicle starts polluting the environment. In the event of a confirmed SCR system malfunction, it is essential to visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop. After 685 miles (1,100 km), a device is automatically activated to prevent the engine from starting. In both cases, a range indicator indicates the distance that can be travelled before the vehicle is stopped.

#### Freezing of the AdBlue®

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C. The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

## Supply of AdBlue®

It is recommended that the AdBlue® be topped up as soon as the first alert is issued indicating that the reserve level has been reached.

 For the correct operation of the SCR system:

- Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.
- Never transfer AdBlue® to another container as it would lose its purity.
- Never dilute AdBlue® with water.


You can obtain AdBlue® from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop, as well as service

stations equipped with AdBlue® pumps specially designed for passenger vehicles.

## Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above +25°C. Containers should be stored in a cool area and protected from direct sunlight. Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.

If the fluid has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out at room temperature.


 Never store AdBlue® containers in your vehicle.

## Precautions for use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This fluid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (when kept in a cool place).


In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and running water. In the event of contact with the eyes, immediately rinse the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. Seek medical attention if you feel a persistent burning sensation or irritation.


If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water. In certain conditions (high temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the fluid. Ammonia vapours have an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).


 Store AdBlue® out of the reach of children, in its original container.

## Procedure

Before starting the top-up procedure, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface. In wintry conditions, ensure that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. Otherwise the AdBlue® may be frozen and so cannot be poured into the tank. Park the vehicle in a warmer area for a few hours to allow the top-up to be carried out.

 Never pour the AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

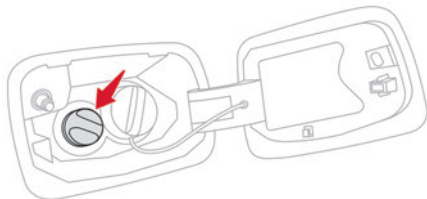
 If any AdBlue® is splashed, or if there are any spillages on the bodywork, rinse immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth. If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

 Important: **in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of AdBlue**, it is essential to wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, unlocking the vehicle, inserting the key into the ignition switch, or bringing the**

### key for the "Keyless Entry and Start" system into the passenger compartment.

Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

- ▶ Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch to switch off the engine.
- or
- ▶ With Keyless Entry and Start, press the "START/STOP" button to switch off the engine.



- ▶ Turn the blue cap of the AdBlue® tank anti-clockwise and remove it.
- ▶ With a container of AdBlue®: after checking the expiry date, read the instructions on the label carefully before pouring the contents of the container into the vehicle's AdBlue® tank.
- ▶ With an AdBlue® pump: insert the nozzle and fill the tank until the nozzle automatically cuts out.

- ! In order not to overfill the AdBlue® tank:
  - Add between 10 and 13 litres using AdBlue® containers.
  - Stop after the nozzle's first automatic cut-out, if you are refilling at a service station.

The system only registers AdBlue® intermediate top-ups of 5 litres or more.

- ! If the AdBlue® tank is completely empty – which is confirmed by the message "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible" – it is essential to add at least 10 litres. Top-up detection may not be instantaneous after addition. It may take a few minutes of driving before the top-up detection is effective.

## Free-wheeling

In certain situations, it is necessary to put the vehicle into free-wheeling mode (e.g. towing, on a rolling road, automatic car wash (Wash mode), rail or sea transport).

The procedure varies according to the type of gearbox and parking brake.

- ! Never leave the vehicle unattended with the vehicle into free-wheeling mode.

## With a manual gearbox and electric parking brake



### To release them

- ▶ With the engine running and while depressing the brake pedal, move the gear selector to the neutral position.

- ▶ While depressing the brake pedal, switch off the engine.
- ▶ Release the brake pedal, then switch on the ignition.
- ▶ While depressing the brake pedal, press the control to release the parking brake.
- ▶ Release the brake pedal, then switch off the ignition.

### Reverting to normal operation

- ▶ While depressing the brake pedal, restart the engine and apply the parking brake.

### i Keyless Entry and Start

You must not depress the brake pedal while switching the ignition on again, then switching it off. If you do, the engine will start, requiring you to restart the procedure.

## With an automatic gearbox and electric parking brake



### Release procedure

- ▶ With the vehicle stationary and the engine running, depress the brake pedal and select mode N.
- Within 5 seconds:**
  - ▶ Depress and hold the brake pedal, then observe this order: switch off the engine and move the push selector forwards or backwards.

- ▶ Release the brake pedal, then switch on the ignition.
- ▶ Place your foot on the brake and press the electric parking brake control to release it.
- ▶ Release the brake pedal, then switch off the ignition.

**!** A message is displayed on the instrument panel to confirm the unlocking of the wheels for 15 minutes. When the vehicle is free-wheeling, the audio system cannot be updated (message displayed on the instrument panel).

### After 15 minutes or reverting to normal operation

- ▶ While depressing the brake pedal, restart the engine and select mode **P**.

**i** **Keyless Entry and Start**  
You must not depress the brake pedal while switching the ignition on again, then switching it off. If you do, the engine will start, requiring you to restart the procedure.

## Advice on care and maintenance

### General recommendations

Observe the following recommendations to avoid damaging the vehicle.

### Exterior

**!** Never use a high-pressure jet wash in the engine compartment - risk of damaging the electrical components! Do not wash the vehicle in bright sunshine or extremely cold conditions.

**i** When washing the vehicle in an automatic roller-brush car wash, be sure to lock the doors and, depending on version, move the electronic key away and deactivate the "hands-free" function (Hands-Free Tailgate Access).

When using a pressure washer, keep the jet nozzle at a minimum distance of 30 cm from the vehicle (particularly when cleaning areas containing chipped paint, sensors or seals). Promptly clean up any stains containing chemicals liable to damage the vehicle's paintwork (including tree resin, bird droppings, insect secretions, pollen and tar). Depending on the environment, clean the vehicle frequently to remove salty deposits (in coastal areas), soot (in industrial areas) and mud/salts (in wet or cold areas). These substances can be highly corrosive. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for advice on removing stubborn stains requiring special products (such as tar or insect removers).

Preferably, have paint touch-ups performed by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Interior

**!** When washing the vehicle, never use a water hose or high-pressure jet to clean the interior. Liquids carried in cups or other open containers can spill, presenting a risk of damage to the instruments and controls and the controls located on the centre console. Be vigilant!  
To clean instrument panels, touch screens or other displays, wipe gently with a soft, dry cloth. Do not use products (e.g. alcohol, disinfectant) or soapy water directly on these surfaces - risk of damage!

## Bodywork

### High-gloss paint

**!** Do not use abrasive products, solvents, petrol or oil to clean the bodywork. Never use an abrasive sponge to clean stubborn stains - risk of scratching the paintwork!  
Do not apply polish in strong sunshine, or to plastic or rubber parts.

**i** Use a soft cloth and soapy water or a pH neutral product.

Gently wipe the bodywork with a clean microfibre cloth.

Apply polish with the vehicle clean and dry.

Comply with the instructions for use stated on the product.

## Decals

(Depending on version)

**!** Do not use a high-pressure washer to clean the vehicle - risk of damaging or detaching the decals!

**i** Use a high-flow hose (temperature between 25°C and 40°C).

Place the jet of water perpendicular to the surface to be cleaned.

Rinse the vehicle with demineralised water.

## Textile

The dashboard, door panels and seats may contain parts made of textile material.

### Maintenance

**!** Do not use aggressive cleaning products (e.g. alcohol, solvent or ammonia).

Do not use steam-cleaning systems - risk of affecting the adhesion of the fabrics!

**i** Remove dust from the textile parts regularly with a dry cloth, soft brush or vacuum cleaner.

Rub down the textile parts once per year with a clean, damp cloth. After leaving overnight to dry, brush with a soft-bristled brush.

### Stain removal

**!** Do not rub the stain or it may spread or you may cause the substance to penetrate the surface.

**i** Act quickly by reducing the stain from its edges inwards.

Remove as much substance or solids as possible using a spoon or spatula, and remove as much liquid as possible using absorbent paper.

**i** **Product/Procedure to use depending on the type of stain:**

- Grease, oil and ink: clean with a pH-neutral detergent.
- Vomit: clean with sparkling mineral water.
- Blood: spread flour over the stain and allow to dry; remove with a slightly damp cloth.
- Mud: allow to dry and then remove with a slightly damp cloth.
- Cake, chocolate, ice cream: clean with lukewarm water.

– Sugary and/or alcoholic drinks: clean with lukewarm water, or lemon juice if the stain is persistent.

– Hair gel, coffee, tomato sauce, vinegar: clean with lukewarm water and lemon juice.

For solid substances, then use a soft brush or vacuum cleaner.

For liquid substances, then use a damp microfibre cloth and then dry with another cloth.

## Leather

Leather is a natural product. Appropriate regular care is essential for its durability.

It must be protected and nourished using a specific leather product, to keep it supple and preserve its original appearance.

**!** Do not clean leather using unsuitable cleaning agents such as solvents, detergents, petrol or pure alcohol.

When cleaning items partly made from leather, take care not to damage the other materials with the specific leather product.

**i** Before cleaning greasy stains or liquids, quickly mop up any surplus.

Before cleaning, wipe off any residues liable to scuff the leather, using a cloth that has been dampened with demineralised water and thoroughly wrung out.

## Practical information

---

Clean leather using a soft cloth moistened with soapy water or a pH-neutral product. Dry with a soft, dry cloth.



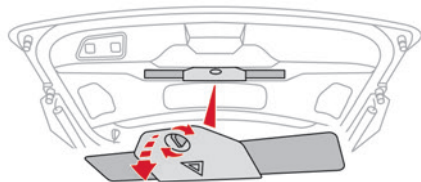
## Warning triangle

This reflective and dismantable device is to be installed on the side of the road when a vehicle is broken down or damaged.

### ! Before getting out of the vehicle

Turn on the hazard warning lamps, then put on the safety vest to assemble and install the triangle.

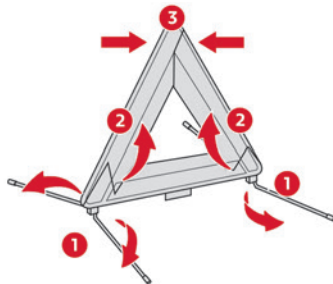
## Storage compartment



There is a compartment in the interior trim of the tailgate to store a warning triangle.

► After opening the tailgate, release the cover by turning the screw a quarter turn to the left.

## Assembling and placing the triangle



For versions supplied with a triangle as original equipment, refer to the illustration above. For other versions, refer to the assembly instructions provided with the triangle.

► Put the triangle in place behind the vehicle, as required by local legislation.

## Running out of fuel (Diesel)

With Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel.

**Before starting to prime the system**, it is essential to put at least 5 litres of Diesel into the fuel tank.

**i** For more information on **Refuelling** and on **Misfuel prevention (Diesel)**, refer to the corresponding section.

### BlueHDi 130 engines

- Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- Wait around 1 minute and switch off the ignition.
- Operate the starter motor to start the engine. If the engine does not start at the first attempt, do not keep trying, but restart the procedure.

### BlueHDi 180 engines

- Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- Repeat the operation 10 times.
- Operate the starter motor to start the engine. If the engine does not start at the first attempt, do not keep trying, but restart the procedure.

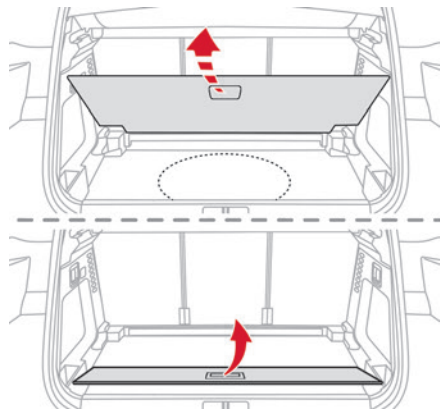
## Tool kit

Set of tools supplied with the vehicle.

Its content depends on your vehicle's equipment:

- Temporary puncture repair kit.
- Spare wheel.

## Accessing the tools



The tool kit is stored in the boot, under the floor.  
To access it:

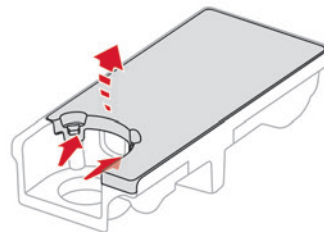
### Versions with 2-position boot floor:

- ▶ Open the boot.
- ▶ Place the adjustable boot floor in the high position.

### Versions with articulated boot mat (Rechargeable hybrid):

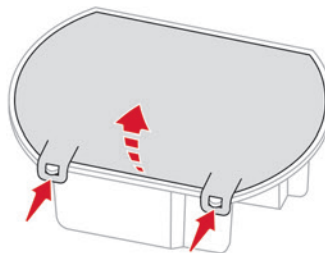
- ▶ Open the boot.
- ▶ Unfold the articulated boot mat by pulling its handle until it is fully opened.

## With temporary puncture repair kit



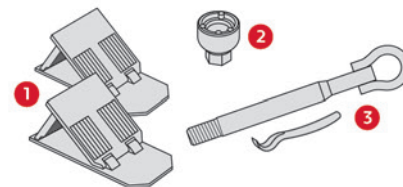
- ▶ Unclip the two fixings to open its cover.

## With spare wheel



- ▶ Unclip the storage box by pulling it upwards.
- ▶ Unclip the two fixings to open its cover.

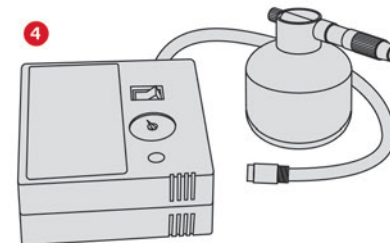
## List of tools



1. Chocks to immobilise the vehicle (depending on equipment)
2. Socket for the wheel security bolts (located in the glove box) (depending on equipment)  
To adapt the wheelbrace to the special 'security' bolts.
3. Towing eye and tool to open the front and rear protective covers

For more information on **Towing the vehicle** and using the removable towing eye, refer to the corresponding section.

## With temporary puncture repair kit

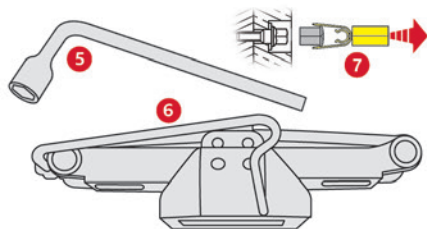


4. 12 V compressor with cartridge of sealant and speed limit sticker

For temporary repair of a tyre and to adjust the tyre pressure.

For more information about the **Temporary puncture repair kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

### With spare wheel



5. Wheelbrace  
For removing the wheel bolts.
6. Jack with integrated handle  
To raise the vehicle.
7. Wheel bolt cap removal tool (depending on equipment)  
For removing the wheel bolt head finishers on alloy wheels.

For more information on the **Spare wheel**, refer to the corresponding section.

! These tools are specific to the vehicle and may vary according to the level of equipment.  
Do not use them for any other purpose.

! The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.  
Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with the vehicle.

If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the one that was intended by the manufacturer.

The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE.

The jack does not require any maintenance.

## Temporary puncture repair kit

i Visit this link to view explanatory videos:  
<http://q-r.to/bagGI9>



Made up of a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows you to carry out a **temporary**

**repair** of the tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.

It is designed to repair most punctures located on the tyre tread.

i The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor to the 12 V power supply for long enough to repair a tyre after a puncture.

i For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

i Tyre inflation pressures are indicated on this label.

For more information on **Identification markings**, particularly this label, refer to the corresponding section.

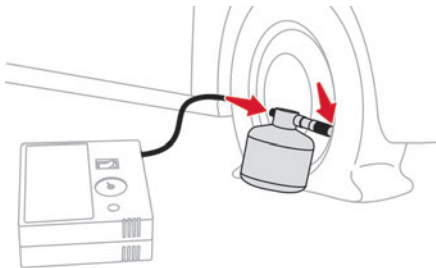


! Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.  
For more information on **Tyre under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Repair procedure

**!** Do not remove any foreign body (e.g. nail, screw) which has penetrated the tyre.

- ▶ Park the vehicle without obstructing traffic and apply the parking brake.
- ▶ Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, high visibility jacket, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
- ▶ Switch the ignition off.
- ▶ Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean place.



- ▶ Connect the pipe from the bottle of sealant to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.
- ▶ Connect the pipe from the compressor to the bottle of sealant.
- ▶ Check that the compressor switch is in position "O".

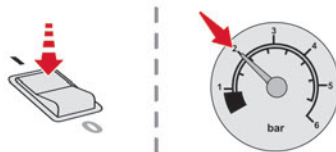
- ▶ Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
- ▶ Connect the compressor's electric plug to one of the vehicle's 12 V sockets.



- ▶ Affix the speed limit sticker.

**!** The speed limit sticker must be affixed inside the vehicle in the area close to the driver, to remind them that a wheel is in temporary use.

- ▶ Switch the ignition on.



- ▶ Switch on the compressor by moving the switch to position "I" until the tyre pressure reaches 2 bar. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tyre; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

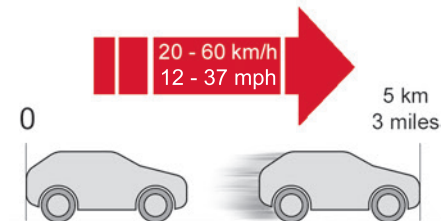
**!** If after approximately 7 minutes, the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- ▶ Move the switch to position "O".
- ▶ Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- ▶ Remove the kit.
- ▶ Refit the cap on the valve.
- ▶ Remove and store the bottle of sealant.

**!** The sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.

Keep this product out of the reach of children. The use-by date of the fluid is marked on the bottle.

After use, do not discard the bottle into the environment; take it to a CITROËN dealer or an authorised waste disposal site. Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.



- ▶ Drive immediately for approximately 3 miles (5 kilometres) at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)) to plug the puncture.

- ▶ Stop to check the repair **and the tyre pressure** using the kit.

**!** With a tyre repaired using this type of kit, do not exceed a speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not drive more than 50 miles (80 km).

You must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to have the repair checked and the tyre changed.

## Checking/adjusting tyre pressures

The compressor can be used, **without injecting sealant**, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.

- ▶ Remove the valve cap from the tyre and keep it in a clean place.
- ▶ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.
- ▶ Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
- ▶ Check that the compressor switch is in position "O".
- ▶ Fully uncoil the electric cable stowed under the compressor.
- ▶ Connect the compressor's electric plug to one of the vehicle's 12 V sockets.
- ▶ Switch the ignition on.
- ▶ Start the compressor by placing the switch at position "I" and adjust the pressure to the value shown on the vehicle's tyre pressure label. To

deflate: press the black button located on the compressor pipe, near the valve connection.

**!** If after 7 minutes the pressure of 2 bar is not reached, the tyre is damaged; contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- ▶ Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch in position "O".
- ▶ Remove the kit and stow it.
- ▶ Refit the cap on the valve.

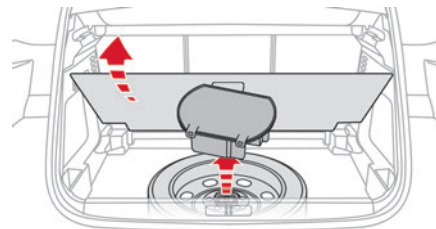
## Spare wheel

**i** Visit this link to view explanatory videos: <http://q-r.to/bagGI9>



**i** For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Accessing the spare wheel

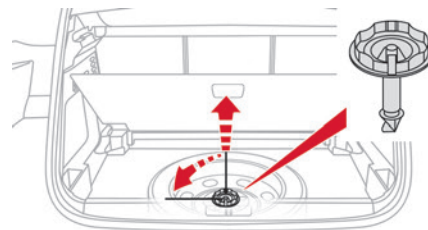


The spare wheel is stored in the boot, under the floor.

To access the spare wheel, first refer to the **Tool kit** section.

**i** Depending on version, the spare wheel may be a standard size steel or alloy wheel. In some countries, it is a 'space saver' wheel.

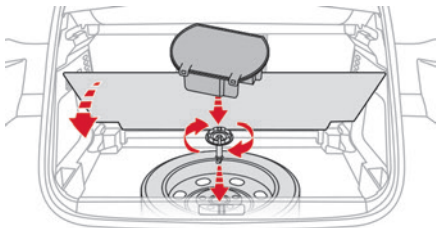
## Removing the spare wheel



- ▶ Slacken the central nut.
- ▶ Remove the fastening device (nut and bolt).

- ▶ Lift the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- ▶ Take the wheel out of the boot.

### Putting the spare wheel back in place



- ▶ Put the spare wheel back in place in its housing.
- ▶ Slacken the nut on the bolt by a few turns.
- ▶ Position the fastening device (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.
- ▶ Tighten the central nut sufficiently to retain the wheel correctly.
- ▶ Put the tool box back in place in the middle of the wheel and clip it in place.

**i** If there is no wheel in the well, the fastening device (nut and bolt) cannot be refitted.

## Removing a wheel

### ! Parking the vehicle

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not obstruct traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.

With a manual gearbox, engage first gear to lock the wheels, apply the parking brake, unless it is set to automatic mode, and switch off the ignition.

With an automatic gearbox, select mode **P** to lock the wheels, apply the parking brake, unless it is set to automatic mode, and switch off the ignition.

Check that the parking brake indicator lamps on the instrument panel are on fixed.

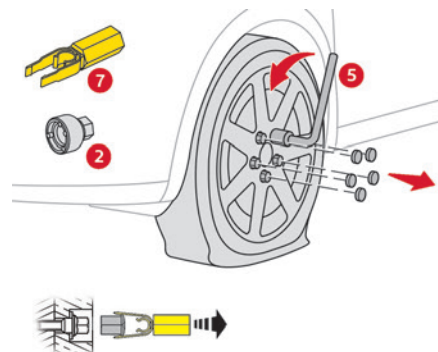
The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.

If necessary, place a chock under the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed. Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.

### i Wheel with wheel trim

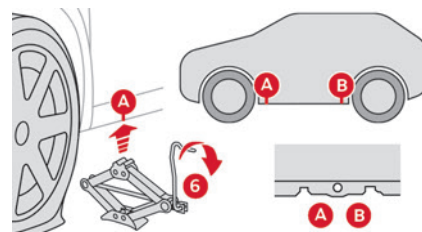
**When removing the wheel**, first remove the wheel trim by pulling at the valve aperture using the wheelbrace.

**When refitting the wheel**, refit the wheel trim, starting by placing its aperture in line with the valve and then pushing it into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.



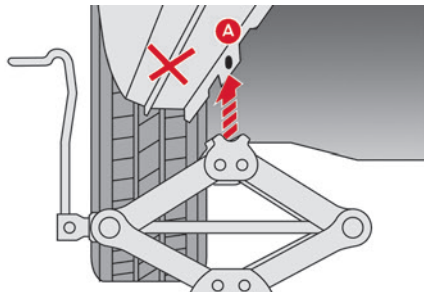
- ▶ To remove the wheel bolt cover on each of the bolts, use tool 7 (alloy wheels).
- ▶ Fit security socket 2 on wheelbrace 5 to slacken the security bolt.
- ▶ Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace 5 only.

**!** Never use an impact wrench on the security bolt socket.



- ▶ Place the foot of jack 6 on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the front A or

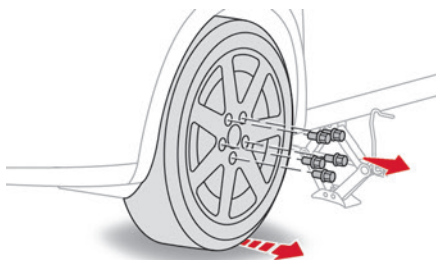
rear **B** jacking point on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



- ▶ Extend jack **6** until its head comes into contact with jacking point **A** or **B**; contact area **A** or **B** on the vehicle must be properly inserted into the central part of the head of the jack.
- ▶ Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to easily admit the spare (not punctured) wheel.

**!** Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or collapse - risk of injury!

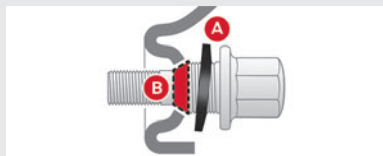
Take care to position the jack strictly at one of the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, ensuring that the head of the jack is centred under the contact area on the vehicle. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or of the jack collapsing - risk of injury!



- ▶ Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- ▶ Remove the wheel.

## Fitting a wheel

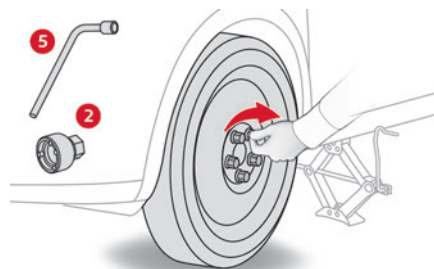
### **i** Fitting a steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel



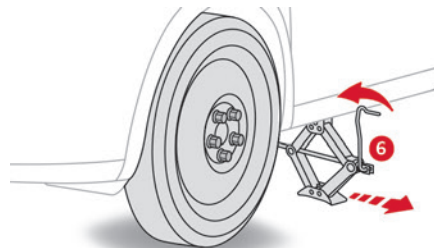
If the vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, the washers **A** do not make contact with the steel or "space-saver" type spare wheel. The wheel is held in place by the conical contact surface **B** of each bolt.

In the event of a breakdown

8

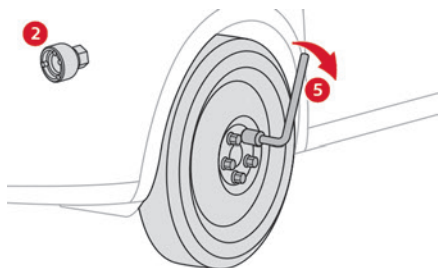


- ▶ Fit the wheel on the hub.
- ▶ Screw in the bolts by hand as far as possible.
- ▶ Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** equipped with a security socket **2**.
- ▶ Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.



- ▶ Lower the vehicle again fully.
- ▶ Fold jack **6** and remove it.

In the event of a breakdown



- ▶ Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** equipped with a security socket **2**.
- ▶ Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.
- ▶ Refit the bolt covers to each of the bolts (depending on equipment).
- ▶ Store the tools.

### After changing a wheel

Store the punctured wheel in the boot or, depending on version, remove the central cover first to store it beneath the floor in place of the spare wheel.

**!** With a non-standard or 'space-saver' spare wheel



Deactivate certain driving aid functions (Active Safety Brake, Adaptive cruise control, etc.).

Do not exceed the maximum authorised speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) or the maximum distance of 50 miles (80 km).

Driving with more than one spare wheel of this type is prohibited.

The wheel trim from the replaced wheel must not be refitted.

**!** Visit a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Have the tightening of the spare wheel's bolts and its tyre pressure checked.

Have the punctured tyre examined. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

## Changing a bulb

**i** In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal, and will disappear after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

**!** Never look too closely at the light beam of LED technology lamps - risk of serious eye injury!



**!** The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:

– **Do not clean them with a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with detergent or solvent products.**

– Use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product.

– When using a high-pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the headlamps, lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

**!** Changing a bulb must only be done with the ignition off and after the headlamp / lamp has been switched off for several minutes - risk of serious burns!

Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers; use a lint-free cloth.



It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the headlamp.  
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb of the same type and specification. To avoid lighting imbalance, replace the bulbs in pairs.

**Refitting the lamp units**  
Perform the operations in the reverse order to dismantling.

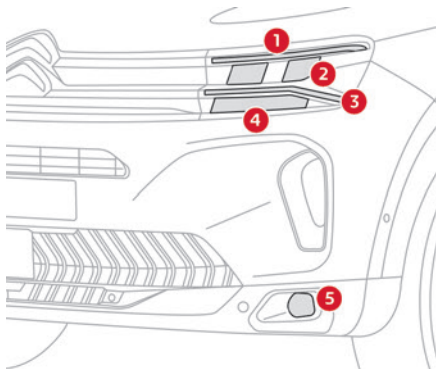
## Light-emitting diode (LED) headlamps and lamps

Depending on version, the affected types of headlamps/lamps are:

- LED technology headlamps.
- Front foglamps.
- Direction indicator side repeaters.
- Side spotlamps.
- Brake lamps.
- Third brake lamp.
- Rear sidelamps.
- Number plate lamps.

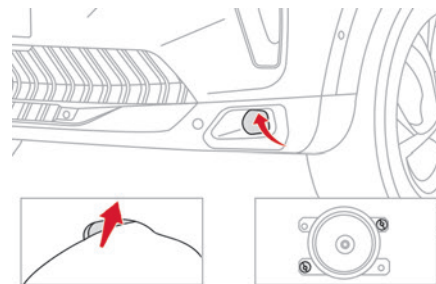
**!** If you need to replace this type of bulb, you must contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.  
Do not touch the LED technology bulbs - risk of electrocution!

## Front lamps

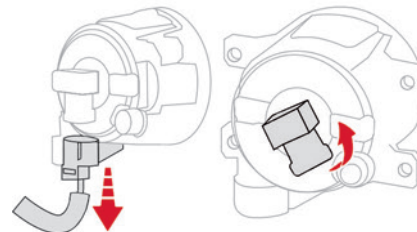


1. Daytime running lamps or Direction indicators (LED)
2. Dipped beam (LED)
3. Daytime running lamps (LED)
4. Main beam headlamps (LED)
5. Foglamps (P21W or LED)

## Foglamps (P21W)



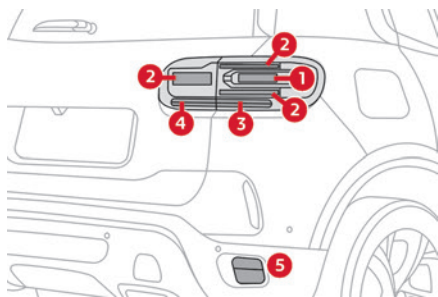
- ▶ Insert a flat screwdriver into the hole in the trim.
- ▶ Pull and lever to unclip the foglamp trim.
- ▶ With a Torx screwdriver, remove the two module fixing screws.
- ▶ Remove the module from its housing.



- ▶ Disconnect the bulb holder connector.
- ▶ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and remove it.
- ▶ Replace the unit.

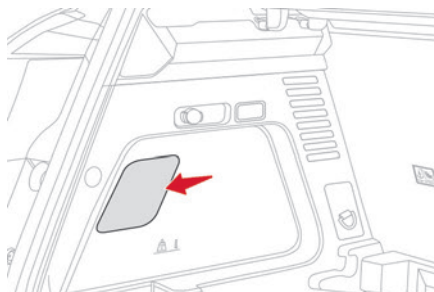
**i** To replace this type of bulb, you can also contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

## Rear lamps

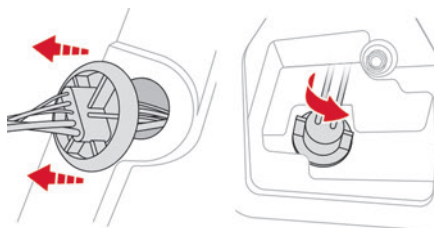


1. Brake lamps (LED)
2. Sidelamps (LED)
3. Direction indicators (WY21W)
4. Reversing lamps (W16W)
5. Foglamps (P21W)

## Direction indicators (on the wings)



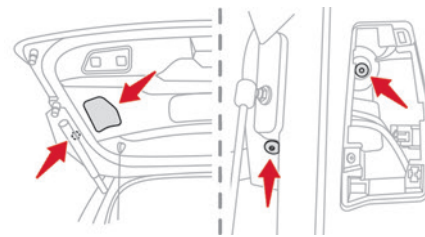
- ▶ Open the tailgate, then unclip the access cover on the side in question.
- ▶ Unblock the 2 lamp fixing nuts with a 10 mm box spanner.
- ▶ To avoid losing the nuts in the wing trim if it drops, first place a cloth below.
- ▶ Manually unscrew and remove the lamp fixing nuts.



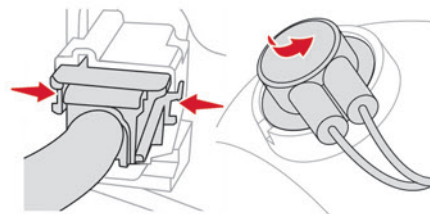
- ▶ From the outside, carefully remove the lamp by pulling it to the rear, then up.

- ▶ Disengage the cable sleeve from the body panel.
- ▶ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn using a universal pair of pliers, if necessary, and pull it out.
- ▶ Remove the bulb and replace it.

## Reversing lamps (on the tailgate)



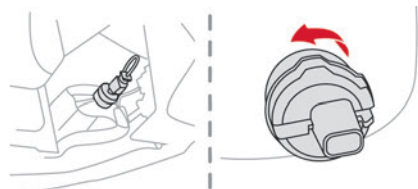
- ▶ Open the tailgate, then insert a flat screwdriver into the cut-out to unclip the access cover on the side in question.
- ▶ Unscrew and remove the 2 lamp fixing Torx screws with a Torx screwdriver.



- ▶ From the outside, carefully remove the lamp by pulling it to the rear.

- ▶ Disconnect the lamp connector by pressing on each side.
- ▶ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and remove it.
- ▶ Remove the bulb and replace it.

## Foglamps



These bulbs are replaced from outside the rear bumper.

- ▶ Pass your hand under the bumper.
- ▶ Turn the bulb holder a quarter turn and remove it.
- ▶ Turn the bulb a quarter turn and replace it.

**!** When changing the bulb within a few minutes of switching off the ignition, take care not to touch the exhaust - risk of burns!

## Fuses

**!** **Changing a fuse**  
All work must be carried out only by a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop

The replacement of a fuse by a third party could cause a serious malfunction of the vehicle.

### **i** Installing electrical accessories

The vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment. Before fitting other electrical equipment or accessories to your vehicle, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** CITROËN accepts no responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing the vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied or not recommended by CITROËN and not installed in accordance with its recommendations, in particular when the combined power consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

## 12 V battery/Accessory batteries

### Lead-acid starter batteries



These batteries contain harmful substances (sulphuric acid and lead). They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must never under any circumstances be discarded with household waste. Dispose of used batteries at a designated collection point.



Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery. All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, to avoid any risk of explosion or fire. Wash your hands afterwards.



**Electronic control units/LED technology headlamps**  
Never connect the negative jump lead to the metal part of the electronic control units or at the back of the headlamps. Risk of destroying the electronic control units and/or headlamps! Connect to the remote earth point provided for this purpose.

### ! Frozen battery

Never try to charge a frozen battery - risk of explosion!

If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a CITROËN dealer or by a qualified workshop, who will verify that the internal components have not been damaged and that the case has not cracked, which could lead to a risk of leakage of toxic and corrosive acid.

### ! Automatic gearbox

Never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

## Symbols



No sparks or naked flames, no smoking.



Always protect your eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness and injury.



Keep the vehicle's battery out of the reach of children.



The vehicle's battery contains sulphuric acid which can make you go blind or cause severe burns.



For more information, refer to the handbook.



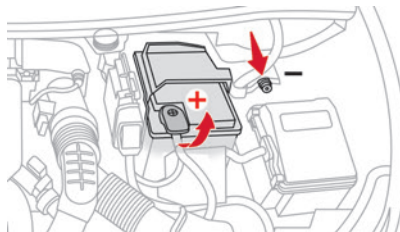
Explosive gases can be present close to the battery.

## With petrol/Diesel engines

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or for charging a discharged battery.

## Accessing the battery

The battery is located under the bonnet.



For access to the (+) terminal:

► Release the bonnet by pulling the internal release lever, then the external safety catch.

► Raise the bonnet.

(+) Positive terminal with a quick-release terminal.

(-) Negative terminal.

As the battery's negative terminal is not accessible, a remote earth point is located near the battery.

## Starting using another battery

If the vehicle's battery is flat, the engine can be started using a backup battery (either external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or using a battery booster.

! Never start the engine by connecting a battery charger.

Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster. Check beforehand that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity

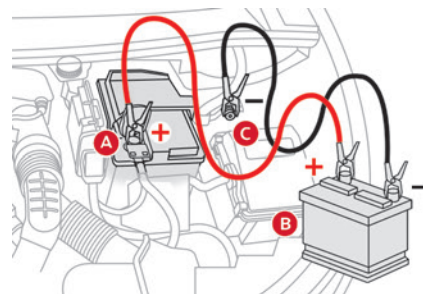
at least equal to that of the discharged battery.

The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.

Switch off all electricity-consuming equipment on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).

Make sure that the jump leads are well away from the engine's moving parts (fan, belt, etc.).

Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



► Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.

► Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow), then to the (+) terminal of the backup battery **B** or of the booster.

► Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of the backup battery **B** or of

the booster (or to an earth point on the assisting vehicle).

- ▶ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to the earth point **C**.
- ▶ Start the engine on the assisting vehicle and leave it running for a few minutes.
- ▶ Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.

If the engine does not start immediately, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.

- ▶ Wait for it to return to idle.
- ▶ Disconnect the jump leads **in reverse order**.
- ▶ Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
- ▶ Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

**!** Driving immediately without having reached a sufficient level of charge may affect some of the vehicle's functions (e.g. Stop & Start).

## Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.

In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- When using the vehicle mainly for short journeys.

– If the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

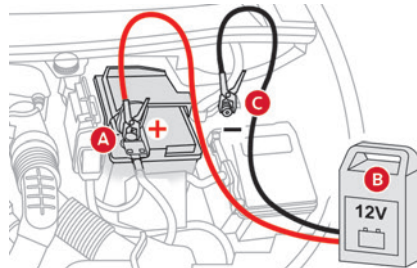
Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

**!** To charge the vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

**!** Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

**i** It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

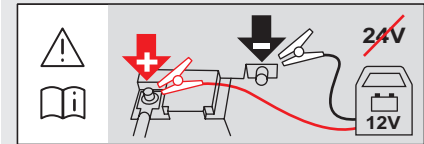
- ▶ Switch the ignition off.
- ▶ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).



- ▶ Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.

- ▶ Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- ▶ Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
- ▶ Connect the cables of charger **B** as follows:
  - the positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of battery **A**,
  - the negative (-) black cable to earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- ▶ At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.

**!** If this label is present, use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components.



## Disconnecting/reconnecting the battery

In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, we recommend disconnecting the battery if the vehicle is to be unused for an extended period.

Before disconnecting the battery:

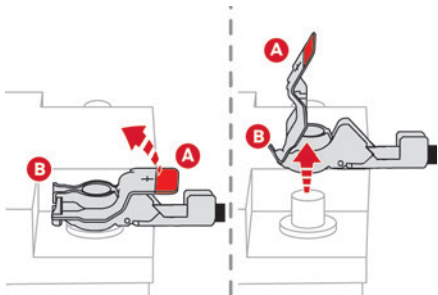
- ▶ Close all openings (doors, boot, windows, roof).

In the event of a breakdown

- ▶ Switch off all electricity-consuming devices (audio system, wipers, lamps, etc.).
- ▶ Switch off the ignition and wait for 4 minutes. After accessing the battery, it is only necessary to disconnect the (+) terminal.

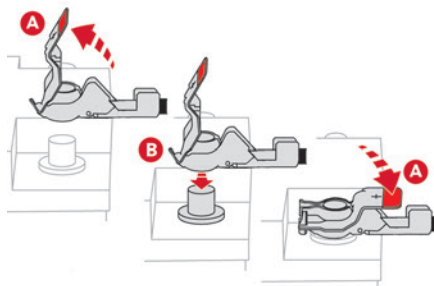
### Quick-release terminal clamp

#### Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- ▶ Depending on equipment, lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal.
- ▶ Raise lever **A** fully to release clamp **B**.
- ▶ Remove clamp **B** by lifting it off.

#### Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- ▶ Raise lever **A** fully.
- ▶ Refit open clamp **B** on the (+) terminal.
- ▶ Push clamp **B** fully down.
- ▶ Lower lever **A** to lock clamp **B**.
- ▶ Depending on equipment, lower the plastic cover on the (+) terminal.

**!** Do not force the lever when pressing on it, as if the clamp is not positioned correctly, locking will then not be possible. Start the procedure again.

**i** The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start. In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period with the vehicle immobilised, the duration of which depends on the exterior temperature and the

state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

## With Rechargeable hybrid engines

The rechargeable hybrid system has two accessory batteries: one at the front and one at the rear of the vehicle.

### **!** Replacing the accessory batteries

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

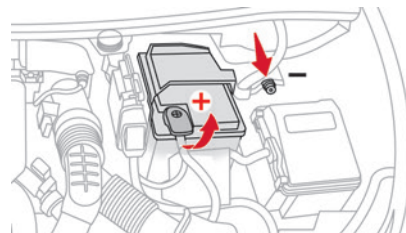
### **!** Jump-starting another vehicle

Do not start or jump-start another vehicle using the vehicle's accessory batteries.

## Accessing the accessory batteries

### Front

The front battery is located under the bonnet.



For access to the (+) terminal:

► Release the bonnet by pulling the internal release lever, then the external safety catch.

► Raise the bonnet.

(+) Positive terminal with a quick-release terminal.

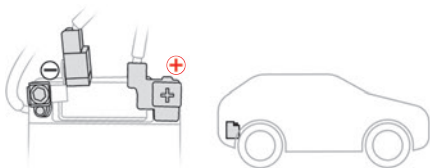
(-) Negative terminal.

As the battery's negative terminal is not accessible, a remote earth point is located near the battery.

### Rear

The rear battery is located in the boot.

To reach the battery:



► Lift the boot floor.

(+) Positive terminal, protected by a red plastic cover (not accessible).

(-) Negative terminal with a black quick-release connector.

## Charging the front battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the front battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.

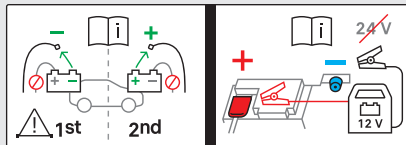
In some circumstances, it may be necessary to charge the front battery:

– When using the vehicle mainly for short journeys.

– If the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

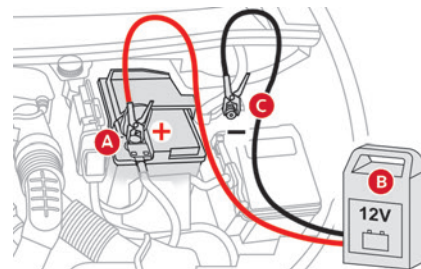
**!** To charge the vehicle's front battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.



**!** Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger. Never reverse polarities.

**i** It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- Switch the ignition off.
- Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).



- Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if the vehicle has one.
- Connect the cables of charger **B** as follows:
  - Positive (+) red cable to the (+) terminal on battery **A**.
  - Negative (-) black cable to earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.

## Disconnecting/reconnecting the accessory batteries

Procedure for disconnecting/reconnecting the accessory batteries in the event of long-term immobilisation of the vehicle.

Before disconnecting the accessory batteries:

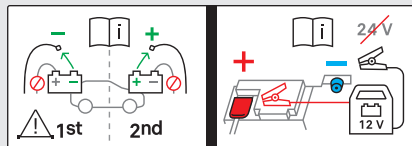
- Open the driver's door and boot.



In the event of a breakdown

- ▶ Close all other doors.
- ▶ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lamps, etc.).
- ▶ Switch off the ignition and wait for the **READY** indicator lamp to go out.
- ▶ Observe a waiting time of 4 minutes.

**!** Never reverse the order of the steps for disconnecting and reconnecting the accessory batteries - risk of irreversible damage!

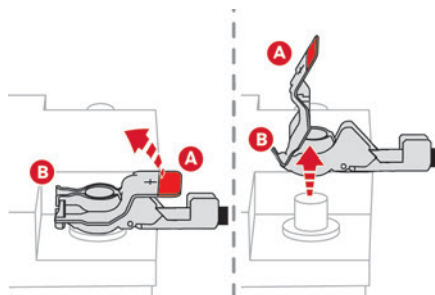


## Disconnection

### Rear battery:

- ▶ Disconnect the (-) terminal using the black quick-release connector.

### Front battery:

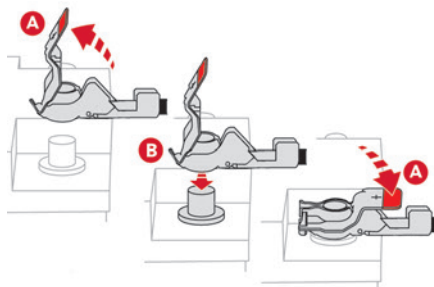


- ▶ Disconnect the (+) terminal by disconnecting the red quick-release clamp:

- Raise lever **A** fully to release clamp **B**.
- Remove clamp **B** by lifting it off.

## Reconnection

### Front battery:



- ▶ Connect the (+) terminal by connecting the red quick-release clamp:

- Raise lever **A** fully.
- Refit open clamp **B** on the (+) terminal.

- Push clamp **B** fully down.
- Lower lever **A** to lock clamp **B**.

### Rear battery:

- ▶ Connect the (-) terminal using the black quick-release connector.

## Following reconnection

After reconnecting the battery, turn on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting the engine, to enable the electronic systems to initialise.

If minor problems nevertheless persist following this operation, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

Referring to the relevant section, reinitialise certain equipment:

- Remote control key or electronic key (depending on version).
- Sunroof and electric blind.
- Electric windows.
- Date and time.
- Preset radio stations.

**i** After reconnecting the battery, the message "**Collision risk detection system fault**" is displayed on the instrument panel when the ignition is switched on. This operation is perfectly normal. The message will disappear while driving.



## Towing the vehicle

### **i** General recommendations

Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving. Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle. The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence. When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towing arm; rope and straps are prohibited. The towing vehicle must move off gently.

When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.

### **!** A professional towing service must be called if:

- Broken down on a motorway or main road.
- Not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake.
- Not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, with the engine running.
- Towing with only two wheels on the ground.
- Four-wheel drive vehicle.

- No approved towbar available.

### **!** Rechargeable hybrid vehicles

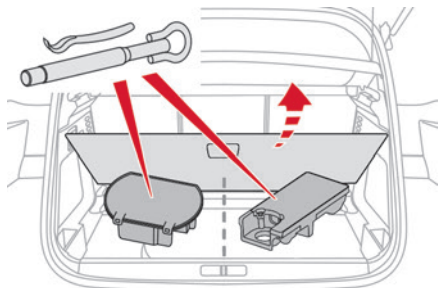
Before any intervention, with the ignition on, depress the brake pedal and select mode **N**, then switch off the hybrid system (**READY** indicator lamp off). Always call on professionals for recovery of the vehicle on a flatbed lorry or trailer. Use the towing eye **only** to free the vehicle if it is stuck, or to secure it for recovery on a flatbed lorry or trailer.

Type of vehicle (engine/gearbox)	Towing constraints			
	Front wheels on the ground	Rear wheels on the ground	Flatbed	4 wheels on the ground with towbar
Internal combustion/Manual				
Internal combustion/Automatic				
Hybrid 2WD				

**2WD:** 2-wheel drive.

**i** In case of battery or electric parking brake failure, it is essential to call a professional using flatbed recovery vehicles (excluding manual gearbox).

## Accessing the tools



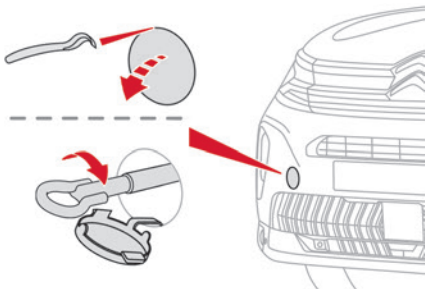
The towing eye is stored in a tool box, under the boot floor.

The opening tool for the rear protective cover is secured to the towing eye.

For more information on accessing the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

## Towing your vehicle

To access the front screw thread:



► Unclip the cover, using the tool attached to the towing eye.

► Release the cover to the right and then downwards.

To be towed:

► Screw the towing eye in fully.

► Install the towbar.

► Put the gearbox into neutral.

**!** Failure to observe this instruction could result in damage to certain components (e.g. braking, transmission) and to the absence of braking assistance the next time the engine is started.

**!** **Automatic gearbox**  
Never tow the vehicle with the driving wheels on the ground and the engine off.

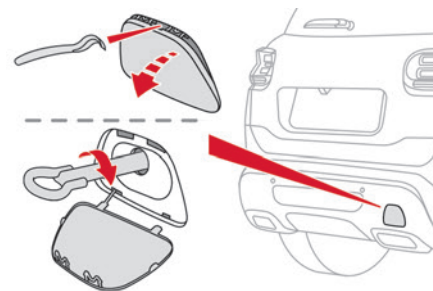
► Unlock the steering and release the parking brake.

► Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles in accordance with the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

► Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

## Towing another vehicle

To access the rear screw thread:



► Unclip the cover, using the tool attached to the towing eye.

► Pull the cover downwards.

To tow:

► Screw the towing eye in fully.

► Install the towbar.

► Switch on the hazard warning lamps on both vehicles.

► Move off gently, drive slowly and only for a short distance.

## Engine technical data and towed loads

### Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

Only the values available at the time of publication are presented in the tables. Contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain missing values.

**i** The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined by European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

### Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to the vehicle are indicated on the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

These values are also indicated on the manufacturer's plate or label.

For more information, contact a CITROËN dealer or a qualified workshop.

The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load value

must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.

The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

**!** When exterior temperatures are high, the vehicle performance may be limited in order to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, reduce the towed weight.

**!** Towing even with a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect its road holding. Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer. When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

## Engines and towed loads - Petrol

Engines	THP 150	THP 165	PureTech 130 S&S Euro 6.3		PureTech 180 S&S Euro 6.3
<b>Gearboxes</b>	<b>EAT6 (Automatic 6-speed)</b>		<b>BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)</b>	<b>EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)</b>	<b>EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)</b>
Codes	EP6FDTMD AT6III		EB2ADTS STTd MB6E	EB2ADTS STTd ATN8	EP6FADTXD STTd ATN8
Model codes J...	5GL / EGR		HNS		5GF
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,598		1,199		1,598
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	110		96		133
Fuel	Unleaded		Unleaded		Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	900	1,000	1,350	1,300	1,500
Unbraked trailer (kg)	750		750	740	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	48		65		65

## Engines and towed loads - Diesel

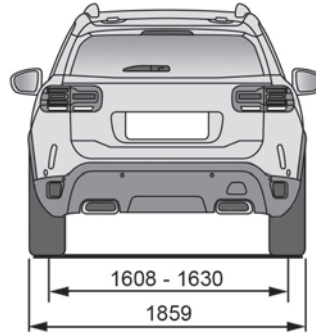
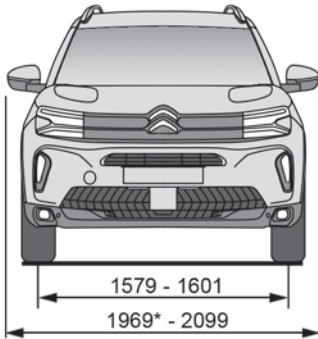
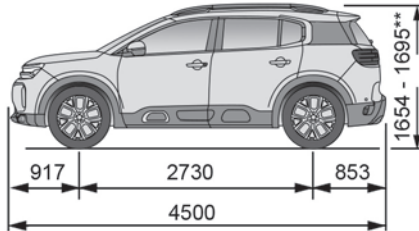
Engines	BlueHDi 130 S&S Euro 6.3		BlueHDi 180 S&S
	BVM6 (Manual 6-speed)	EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)	EAT8 (Automatic 8-speed)
Gearboxes			
Codes	DV5RC STTd ML6C	DV5RC STTd ATN8	DW10FC STTa AMN8
Model codes J...	YHZ		EHX/AHW
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,499		1,997
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	96		130
Fuel	Diesel		Diesel
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,450	1,250	1,650
Unbraked trailer (kg)	750	750	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	58	65	66

## Engine and towed loads - Rechargeable hybrid

	<b>Hybrid 225 e-EAT8</b>
Code	EP6FADTX
Model code J...	DGZ
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,300
Unbraked trailer (kg)	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	65
<b>Petrol engine</b>	PureTech 180
<b>Gearbox</b>	Electric automatic 8-speed
Cubic capacity (cc)	1,598
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	132
Fuel	Unleaded
<b>Electric motor</b>	
Technology	Synchronous with permanent magnets
Max. power: EC standard (kW)	80
<b>Battery</b>	
Technology	Lithium-Ion
Voltage (Volts AC)	240-400
Max. consumption (kWh)	13.2
<b>Combined power (kW)</b>	<b>165</b>

## Dimensions (mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.

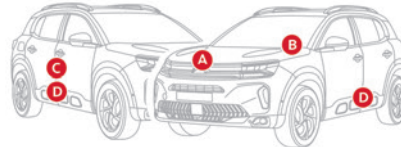


\* Mirrors folded in.

\*\* Version with longitudinal bars.

## Identification markings

Various visible markings for vehicle identification and vehicle search.



**A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), under the bonnet.**

Stamped on the chassis.

**B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the dashboard.**

Printed on an adhesive label visible through the windscreen.

**C. Manufacturer's label.**

Affixed to the right-hand door.

Bears the following information:

- Manufacturer's name.
- European whole vehicle type approval number.
- Vehicle Identification number (VIN).
- Gross vehicle weight (GVW).
- Gross train weight (GTW).
- Maximum weight on the front axle.
- Maximum weight on the rear axle.

**D. Tyres/paint code label.**

Affixed to the driver's door.

Bears the following information about the tyres:

- Tyre pressures, unladen and laden.
- Tyre specification, made up of the dimensions and type as well as the load and speed indices.
- Spare tyre inflation pressure.

Also indicates the paint colour code.

**i** The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting tyre pressure (on cold tyres). In the event of a change in the type of tyres, contact a CITROËN dealer for the tyre fits approved for the vehicle.

# CITROËN Connect Radio

## Multimedia audio system - Applications - Bluetooth® telephone

**i** The functions and settings described vary according to the vehicle version and configuration, as well as the country of sale.

**!** For safety reasons and because they require sustained attention by the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:

- Pairing the smartphone with the system via Bluetooth.
- Using the smartphone.
- Connecting to the CarPlay® or Android Auto applications (certain applications stop displaying when the vehicle is moving).
- Changing the system settings and configuration.

**i** The system is protected so that it only operates in the vehicle. The message **Energy economy mode** is displayed when the system is about to go into standby.

**i** The system's Open Source Software (OSS) source codes are available at the following addresses:  
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>  
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>

### First steps



With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.

With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).

Use the buttons on either side of or below the touch screen to access the menus, then press the virtual buttons on the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" and "Menu" buttons on the left of the touch screen to access the menus, then press the virtual buttons on the touch screen.

At all times it is possible to display the rolling menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All touch-sensitive areas on the screen are white.

On pages with multiple tabs at the bottom of the screen, you can switch between pages either by tapping the tab for the desired page or by swiping the pages to the left or right with your finger.

Press in the shaded area to go back up a level or confirm.

Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.



The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.

To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.

Do not use sharp objects on the screen.

Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper bar of the touch screen:

- Air conditioning status information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Radio Media and Telephone menu status information.
- Privacy status information.
- Access to the touch screen and digital instrument panel settings.

Audio source selection (depending on equipment):

- FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- USB Memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).





In the "Settings" menu, it is possible to create a profile for an individual or for a group of people with shared interests, and configure a wide range of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, etc.). Settings are applied automatically.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may enter standby mode (with the screen and sound off) for 5 minutes or more. The system will resume normal operation when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

## Steering mounted controls

### Steering mounted controls - Type 1



**Radio:**  
Select the previous/next preset radio station.

Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

**Media:**  
Select the previous/next track.  
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.



**Radio:**  
Short press: display the list of radio stations.

Long press: update the list.

**Media:**  
Short press: display the list of folders.  
Long press: display the available sorting options.



Change audio source (radio; USB; AUX if equipment connected; CD; streaming).



Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute/restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

### Steering mounted controls - Type 2



**Voice commands:**  
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).  
Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.  
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).  
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



**Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.



**Telephone** (short press): start telephone call.

**Call in progress** (short press): access telephone menu.

**Telephone** (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



**Radio** (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.

**Media** (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.

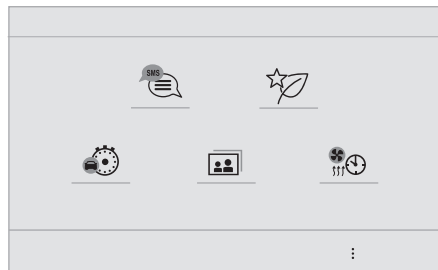
**Short press:** confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.


**LIST** **Radio:** display the list of stations.  
**Media:** display the list of tracks.

**Radio** (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

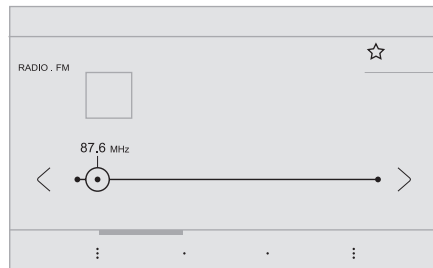
## Menus


## Applications



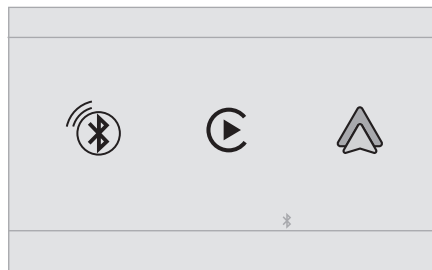
 Access configurable equipment.


## Radio Media



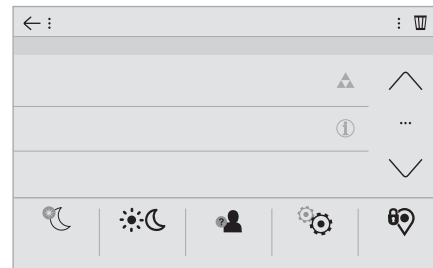
 Select an audio source or radio station.


## Telephone



 Connect a mobile phone via Bluetooth®.  
 Run certain applications from a smartphone connected via CarPlay® or Android Auto.


## Settings



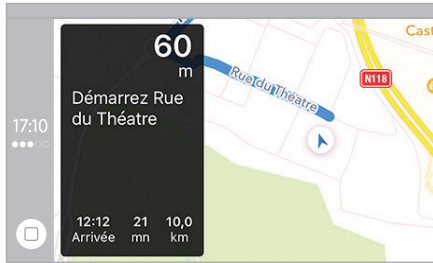
 Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).


## Driving



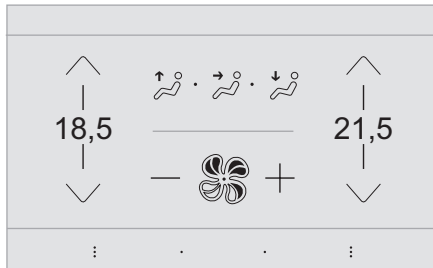
 Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.


## Navigation



 Configure the navigation and select your destination via CarPlay® or Android Auto.

## Air conditioning




 Manage various temperature and air flow settings.







## Applications

### Viewing photos





Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

 To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats: .tiff; .gif; .jpg/jpeg; .bmp and .png.

-  Press **Applications** to display the main page.
-  Press **"Photos"**.
-  Select a folder.
-  Select an image to view.
-  Press this button to display the details of the photo.
-  Press the back arrow to go back a level.





### Managing messages

-  Press **Applications** to display the main page.
-  Press **"SMS"**.
-  Select the **"SMS"** tab.
-  Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

-  Press this button to search and select a recipient.
-  Select the **"Quick messages"** tab.
-  Press this button to select the display settings for messages.
-  Press this button to write a new message.
-  Press the bin alongside the selected message to delete it.
-  Press this button alongside the selected message to display the secondary page.
-  Press this button to edit and modify the existing text.
-  Press this button to write a new message.
-  Press the bin to delete the message.

## Radio

### Selecting a station

-  Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.
-  Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.
- Or
-  Move the slider to manually search for frequencies up or down.
- Or
-  Press the frequency.



Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "OK" to confirm.



Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.

The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode.

This phenomenon is perfectly normal in the context of radio wave transmission, and in no way indicative of an audio system malfunction.

## Changing the waveband



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "OPTIONS" button to access the secondary page.



Press "Band" to change waveband.



Press in the shaded area to confirm.

## Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.



Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is solid, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.

Press "Preset".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

## Activating/Deactivating RDS

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies.



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "OPTIONS" button to access the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate "RDS".



Press in the shaded area to confirm.



RDS station tracking may not be available nationwide, as many radio stations do not cover 100 % of the country. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

## Displaying text information

The "Radio Text" function displays information transmitted by the radio station relating to the station or the currently playing song.



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "OPTIONS" button to access the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate "News".



Press in the shaded area to confirm.

## Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that transmits this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the previously playing media resumes at the end of the message.



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "OPTIONS" button to access the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate "TA".



Press in the shaded area to confirm.

## Audio settings



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "OPTIONS" button to access the secondary page.



Press "Audio settings".



Select the **"Tone"**, **"Balance"**, **"Sound"**, **"Voice"** or **"Ringtones"** tab to configure the sound settings.



Press the back arrow to confirm.

In the **"Tone"** tab, the **Ambience**, **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** sound settings are different and independent for each audio source.

In the **"Balance"** tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.

In the **"Sound"** tab, activate or deactivate **"Volume linked to speed"**, **"Auxiliary input"** and **"Touch tones"**.

The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) uses audio processing to adjust the sound quality according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

Onboard audio: Arkamys Sound Staging® optimises the sound distribution inside the passenger compartment.

## DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

### Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality sound. The various "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations organised in alphabetical order.



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Press **"Band"** to select **"DAB band"**.



Press in the shaded area to confirm.

### FM-DAB Follow-up

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory. When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Follow-up" enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically switching to the corresponding "FM" analogue station (if there is one).



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.



Activate/deactivate **"FM-DAB Follow-up"**.



Press in the shaded area to confirm.

If "FM-DAB Follow-up" is activated, there may be a time offset of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio, and in some cases a change in volume. When the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB". To minimise this time lag, storing radio stations in the "DAB" band is recommended.

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM", or if "FM-DAB Follow-up" is not activated, the sound will cut out when the digital signal becomes too weak.

## Media

### USB port



Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time. Playlists are updated whenever the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The audio system memorises these lists, which will subsequently load faster if they have not been changed.

## Auxiliary (AUX) jack socket

Depending on equipment



Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been selected in the audio settings.

First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system.

Controls are managed via the portable device.

## Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**SOURCES**" button.

Select the source.

## BluetoothStreaming®


Streaming allows you to listen to the audio feed from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated.

First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.


 Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

## Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB socket using a suitable cable (not supplied).

Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

 The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/ albums/genres/playlists/audio books/ podcasts). It is also possible to use a classification structured in the form of a library.

The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.


The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

## Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via the USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.

Devices are managed using the audio system controls.

Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, if compatible.

 To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.


The audio system will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. All ".wma" files must be standard WMA 9 files.

The supported sampling rates are 11, 22, 44 and 48 KHz.

To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. " ? . ; ù).

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

 We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

## Telephone

### USB sockets

Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with **CarPlay®** or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

**i** For the list of compatible smartphones, visit the Manufacturer's website in your country.

**i** Synchronising a smartphone enables users to display applications that support the smartphone's CarPlay® or Android Auto technology on the vehicle's screen. For CarPlay® technology, the CarPlay® function must first be activated on the smartphone. Unlock the smartphone for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work.

As principles and standards are constantly changing, **we recommend keeping the smartphone's operating system up-to-date, together with the date and time on the smartphone and the system.**

### CarPlay® smartphone connection

Depending on country.

**i** On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode. The "**CarPlay**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



If the smartphone has already connected by Bluetooth®.



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

**i** When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to Radio Media mode; the source must be changed manually.



The CarPlay® navigation can be accessed at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

## Android Auto smartphone connection

Depending on country.



On the smartphone, download the Android Auto application.



The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

### Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.



Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**Android Auto**" function.



During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.

Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, we recommend enabling Bluetooth® on the smartphone.

### Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the main page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to display the secondary page.



Press **"Android Auto"** to start the application in the system.

Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the Android Auto display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

**i** There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

## Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

**!** The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the telephone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

**i** The Bluetooth function must be activated and the telephone configured as "Visible to all" (in the telephone settings).

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

**i** If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

### Procedure from the telephone



Select the name of the system in the list of detected devices.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

### Procedure from the system



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.



Press **"Bluetooth search"**.  
The list of detected telephones is displayed.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

### Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **"Streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the telephone),
- **"Mobile internet data"**.



Select one or more profiles.



Press **"OK"** to confirm.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

**i** The ability of the system to connect just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

**i** The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Visit the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

### Automatic reconnection

On returning to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds after switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).

#### To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the **"PHONE"** button to access the secondary page.



Press **"Bluetooth connection" to display the list of paired devices.**



Press the "Details" button for a paired device.




Select one or more profiles.




 Press **"OK"** to confirm.


## Managing paired telephones

This function lets you connect or disconnect a device or delete a pairing.

 Press **Telephone** to display the main page.


Press the **"PHONE"** button to access the secondary page.


 Press **"Bluetooth connection" to display the list of paired devices.**

 Press on the name of the telephone selected in the list to disconnect it.

Press again to connect it.


## Deleting a telephone

 Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.


 Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.


## Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.


 Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And


 Make a long press

 on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.


Or


 Press **"End call"**.

## Making a call

 Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.  
Parking the vehicle.  
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.


## Calling a new number

 Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

 Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

 Press **"Call" to start the call.**

## Calling a contact

 Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

 Or press and hold


 the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Press **"Contacts"**.

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.

 Press **"Call"**.

## Calling a recently used number

 Press **Telephone** to display the main page.


Or

 Press and hold


 the steering mounted button.

Press **"Recent calls"**.


Select the desired contact from the displayed list.


 It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

## Setting the ringtone

 Press **Telephone** to display the main page.



Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.

 Press **"Ring volume"** to display the volume bar.






 Press the arrows or move the slider to set the ring volume.

## Settings





### Configuring profiles

-  Press **Settings** to display the main page.
-  Press "**Profiles**".




Select "**Profile 1**", "**Profile 2**", "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".

-  Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.
- OK**  
Press "**OK**" to save.
-  Press the back arrow to confirm.
-  Press this button to activate the profile.
-  Press the back arrow again to confirm.
-  Press this button to reset the selected profile.


### Adjusting the brightness

-  Press **Settings** to display the main page.
-  Press **Brightness**.
-  Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel (depending on version).
-  Press in the shaded area to confirm.




### Modifying system settings




-  Press **Settings** to display the main page.
-  Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.
-  Press "**System configuration**".



Press the "**Units**" tab to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature. Press the "**Factory settings**" tab to restore the initial settings.




 Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (depending on version).

Press the "**System info**" tab to display the versions of the various modules installed in the system. Press the "**Privacy**" tab, or





-  Press **Settings** to display the main page.
-  Press "**Privacy**" to activate or deactivate the private data mode. Activate or deactivate:
  - "**No sharing (data, vehicle position)**".
  - "**Only data sharing**".
  - "**Data and vehicle position sharing**".
-  Press the back arrow to confirm.

-  Press **Settings** to display the main page.
-  Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.
-  Press "**Screen configuration**".


Press "**Brightness**".  
 Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel (depending on version).  
 Press the back arrow to confirm.









- Press "**Animation**".
-  Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".
  -  Select "**Animated transitions**".
  -  Press the back arrow to confirm.


### Selecting the language

-  Press **Settings** to display the main page.
-  Press "**Configuration**" to access the secondary page.
-  Select "**Language**" to change the language.
-  Press the back arrow to confirm.




### Setting the time





-  Press **Settings** to display the main page.


-  Press **"Configuration"** to access the secondary page.
-  Press **"Date and time"**.
- Select **"Time"**.
-  Press this button to set the time using the virtual keypad.
- OK**  
Press **"OK"** to save the time.
-  Press this button to set the time zone.
-  Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).
-  Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).
-  Activate or deactivate GPS synchronisation (UTC).
-  Press the back arrow to save the settings.

 The system may not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

## Setting the date

-  Press **Settings** to display the main page.
-  Press **"Configuration"** to access the secondary page.
-  Press **"Date and time"**.
- Select **"Date"**.

-  Press this button to set the date.
-  Press the back arrow to save the date.
-  Select the display format for the date.
-  Press the back arrow again to confirm.

 Time and date setting is only available if "GPS Synchronisation." is deactivated.

## Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

### Radio

**The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the station presets are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).**

The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.

► Activate the "RDS" function in the upper bar to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.

The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS mode.

This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction. The aerial is missing or has been damaged (for example while entering a car wash or underground car park).

► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

**I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations.**

**The name of the radio station changes.**

The station is no longer received or its name has changed in the list.

► Press the round arrow on the "List" tab on the "Radio" page.

Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).

The system interprets these details as the station name.

► Press the round arrow on the "List" tab on the "Radio" page.

### Media

**Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).**

Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the cataloguing time).

► Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.

**Some characters in information about the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.**

The audio system is unable to process certain types of character.

► Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.

**Playback of streaming files does not start.**

The connected device does not automatically launch playback.

► Start playback from the device.

**Track names and playing times are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.**

The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.

## Telephone

**I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.**

The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the device may not be visible.

► Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on.

► Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".

The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.

► Check the compatibility of the telephone on the Brand's website (services).

**Android Auto and/or CarPlay do not work.**

Android Auto and CarPlay may not activate if the USB cables are of poor quality.

► Use genuine USB cables to ensure compatibility.

**Android Auto and/or CarPlay do not work.**

Android Auto and CarPlay are not available in all countries.

► Check the Google Android Auto or Apple website to see which countries are supported.

**The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.**

The volume depends on both the system and the telephone.

► Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.

Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.

► Reduce ambient noise (close windows, turn down ventilation, slow down, etc.).

**The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.**

Some telephones offer display options.

Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.

► Modify the telephone directory display settings.

## Settings

**When the treble and bass settings are changed, the ambience is deselected.**

**When the ambience is changed, the treble and bass settings are reset.**

Selecting an ambience imposes the treble and bass settings, and vice versa.

► Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.

**When the balance settings are changed, the distribution is deselected.**

**When the distribution setting is changed, the balance settings are deselected.**

Selecting a distribution setting imposes the balance settings, and vice versa.

► Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.

**There is a difference in sound quality between audio sources.**

To allow for optimal listening quality, the sound settings can be tailored to different audio sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.

► Check that the sound settings are appropriate to the sources listened to. Adjust the sound functions to the middle position.

**When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.**


When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.


The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.

► Start the vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.


# CITROËN Connect Nav


## GPS navigation - Applications - Multimedia audio system - Bluetooth® telephone

 The functions and settings described vary according to the vehicle version and configuration, as well as the country of sale.


 For safety reasons and because they require sustained attention by the driver, the following operations must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on:

- Pairing the smartphone with the system via Bluetooth.
- Using the smartphone.
- Connecting to the CarPlay® or Android Auto applications (certain applications stop displaying when the vehicle is moving).
- Watching a video (the video stops when the vehicle starts to move again).
- Changing the system settings and configuration.


 AM and DAB radio are not available on Hybrid vehicles.

 The system is protected so that it only operates in the vehicle.

The message **Energy economy mode** is displayed when the system is about to go into standby.


 System and map updates can be downloaded from the Brand's website.

The update procedure is also available there.

 The system's Open Source Software (OSS) source codes are available at the following addresses:

<https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/>  
<https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/>


## First steps

 With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.

With the ignition off, a press turns the system on. Increase or decrease the volume using the wheel or the "plus" or "minus" buttons (depending on the equipment).

Use the menu buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen. Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons to access the rolling menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen. Display the rolling menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white. Press the back arrow to go back a level. Press "OK" to confirm.

 The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.

To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.

Do not use sharp objects on the screen. Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the side bars or in the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment):

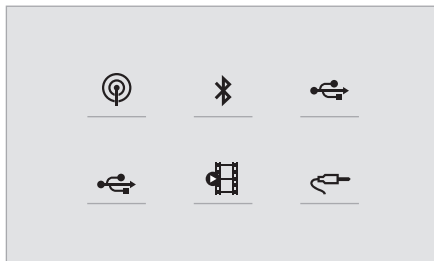
- Air conditioning status information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the audio source selection option, to view the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the "Notifications" of messages, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.

Audio source selection (depending on equipment):

- FM/DAB/AM radio stations (depending on equipment).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast (streaming).
- USB memory stick.



- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on equipment).
- Video (depending on equipment).



**i** In the "Settings" menu, it is possible to create a profile for an individual or for a group of people with shared interests, and configure a wide range of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, favourite contacts, etc.). Settings are applied automatically.

**i** In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may enter standby mode (with the screen and sound off) for 5 minutes or more. The system will resume normal operation when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

## Steering mounted controls



### Voice control:

This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment).

Short press, system voice control.

Long press, voice commands from smartphone or CarPlay®, Android Auto via the system.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.

Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously (depending on equipment).

Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.



**Media** (short press): change the multimedia source.



**Telephone** (short press): start telephone call.

**Call in progress** (short press): access telephone menu.

**Telephone** (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.



**Radio** (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.

**Media** (rotate): previous/next track, move through a list.

**Short press**: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access presets.



**Radio**: display the list of stations.

**Media**: display the list of tracks.

**Radio** (press and hold): update the list of detected stations.

## Menus

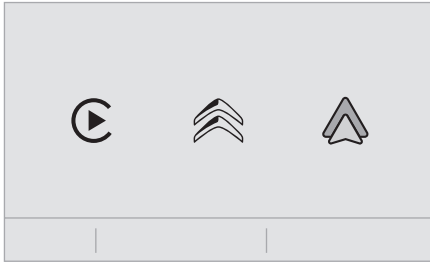
### Connected navigation




Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.

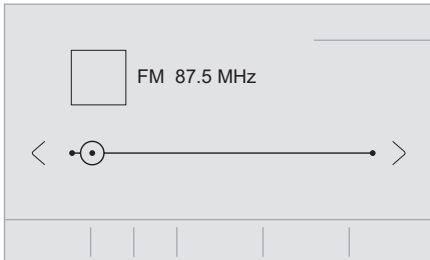
Use real-time services, depending on equipment.


## Applications



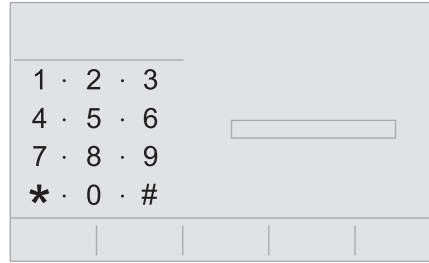
 Run certain applications from a smartphone connected via CarPlay® or Android Auto. Check the status of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.


## Radio Media



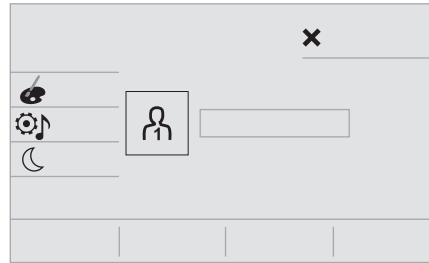
 Select an audio source or radio station, or display photographs.


## Telephone



 Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.


## Settings



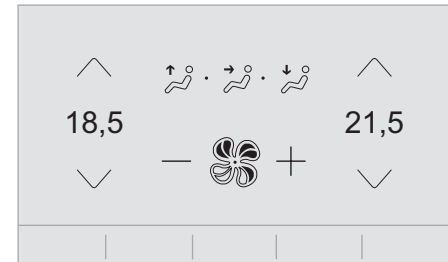
 Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).


## Vehicle



 Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

## Air conditioning



 Manage various temperature and air flow settings.

## Voice commands

### Steering wheel-mounted controls



#### Voice commands:

Voice commands can be issued from any screen page after a short press on the "Voice commands" button located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on equipment), as long as there is no telephone call in progress.



To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please follow these recommendations:

- **use natural language in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.**
- always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
- for best results, closing the windows and sunroof is recommended, to avoid extraneous interference (depending on version).
- before issuing a voice command, ask any other passengers to refrain from speaking.

### First steps



Example of a "voice command" for navigation:

**"Navigate to address 11 regent street, London"**

Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:

**"Play artist Madonna"**

Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:

**"Call David Miller"**



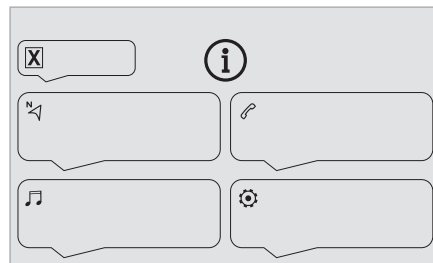
The voice commands, with a choice of 17 languages (Arabic, Brazilian, Czech, Danish, Dutch, English, Farsi, French, German, Italian, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Russian, Spanish, Swedish, Turkish), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system. For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.

Example: Guide to / Navigate to / Go to / ...  
The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city", are not available.

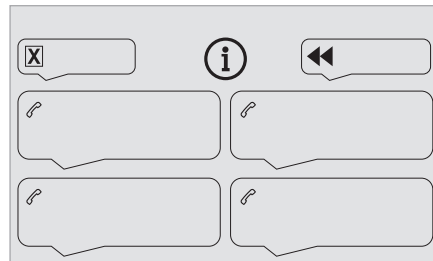
### Information - Using the system



When voice commands are activated, by briefly pressing the button, help is displayed on the touch screen, offering various menus and enabling voice-based interaction with the system.



A number of commands are available when a menu is selected.



Press the Push To Talk button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask to me do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by



step. There's more information available in "novice" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.

## Global voice commands



### Voice commands

**Set dialogue mode as novice - expert**  
**Select user 1 / Select profile John**  
**Increase temperature**  
**Decrease temperature**



### Help messages

There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls". Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.

## "Navigation" voice commands



### Voice commands

**Navigate home**  
**Navigate to work**  
**Navigate to preferred address, Tennis club**  
**Navigate to contact, John Miller**  
**Navigate to address 11 regent street, London**



### Help messages

To plan a route, say "navigate to" followed by the address, the contact name or an intersection. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", "navigate to contact, John Miller", or "navigate to intersection of Regent Street, London". You can specify if it's a preferred address, or a Point of Interest. For example, say "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", or "navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London". Or, you can just say, "navigate home". To see Points of Interest on a map, you can say things like "show POI hotels in Banbury". For more information say "help with points of interest" or "help with route guidance".

To choose a destination, say something like "navigate to line three" or "select line two". If you can't find the destination but the street's right, say for example "select the street in line three". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.



### Voice commands

**Tell me the remaining distance**  
**Tell me the remaining time**  
**Tell me the arrival time**  
**Stop route guidance**



### Help messages

You can say "stop" or "resume route guidance". To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "remaining

distance" or "arrival time". To learn more commands, try saying "help with navigation".



### Voice commands

**Show POI "hotel" at the destination**  
**Show nearby POI petrol station**  
**Navigate to POI Heathrow Airport in London**  
**Navigate to POI petrol station along the route**



### Help messages

To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury", "show nearby parking", "show hotel at the destination" or "show petrol station along the route". If you prefer to navigate directly to a point of interest, you can say "navigate to nearby petrol station". If you feel you are not being well understood, try to say the word "POI" in front of the point of interest. For example say "navigate to POI restaurant at the destination".

To choose a POI, say something like "select line 2". If you've searched for a Point of Interest and don't see the one you're after, you can filter further by saying something like "select POI in line 2", or "select the city in line 3". You can also scroll through the list by saying "next page" or "previous page".

**i** Depending on the country, give destination (address) instructions in the language configured for the system.

## "Radio Media" voice commands



### Voice commands

**Turn on source radio - Streaming Bluetooth**  
- ...



### Help messages

You can select an audio source by saying "turn on source" followed by the device name. For example, "turn on source, Streaming Bluetooth", or "turn on source, radio". Use the command "play" to specify the type of music you'd like to hear. You can choose between "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".



### Voice commands

**Tune to channel BBC Radio 2**  
**Tune to 98.5 FM**

**Tune to preset number five**



### Help messages

You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say for example "tune to preset number five".



### Voice commands

**What's playing?**



### Help messages

To choose what you'd like to play, start by saying "play" and then the item. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play line 3" or "select line 2". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.



### Voice commands

**Play song Hey Jude**

**Play artist Madonna**

**Play album Thriller**



### Help messages

I'm not sure what you'd like to play. Please say "play" and then a song title, an album title, or an artist name. For example, say "play song Hey Jude", "play artist Madonna" or "play album Thriller". To select a line number from the display, say "select line two". To move around a displayed list, you can say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.



Media voice commands are available only with a USB connection.

## "Telephone" voice commands



If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session is closed.



### Voice commands

**Call David Miller\***

**Call voicemail\***

**Display calls\***



### Help messages

To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 107776 835 417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to

\* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and the corresponding download has been performed.



David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting". To choose a contact, say something like "select line three". To move around the list say "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.

## "Text message" voice commands

**i** If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session is closed.

**i** The "Text messages" voice commands function allows you to dictate and send an SMS.

Dictate the text, taking care to pause briefly between each word.

When you have finished, the voice recognition system will automatically generate an SMS.



### Voice commands

**Send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late**



### Help messages

From the list of quick messages, say the name of the one you'd like to send. To move around the list you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.



### Voice commands

**Send SMS to John Miller, I'm just arriving**  
**Send SMS to David Miller at the office, don't wait for me**



### Help messages

Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". You can undo your last action and start over by saying "undo", or say "cancel" to cancel the current action.



### Voice commands

**Listen to most recent message\***



### Help messages

To hear your last message, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to

Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages.

**i** The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

## Navigation

### Choice of a destination

#### To a new destination

##### Intuitive method:



Press **Navigation** to display the main page.



Press **"Search..."**.



Enter an address or the key words for the destination.



Press **"OK"** to select the **"Guidance criteria"**.

Or

##### Guided method:

**i** In order to be able to use the navigation, you must enter the **"City"**, the **"Street"** (suggestions are displayed automatically when you begin typing), then enter the **"Number"** using the virtual keypad, or select

\* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and the corresponding download has been performed.

an address from the **"Contact"** list or the address **"History"**.

**i** If you do not confirm the number, the navigation system will show one end of the street.

Press the **"MENU"** button to access the secondary page.



Select **"Enter address"**.

Then



Select the **"Country"**.



Select the keyboard "language".



Change the keyboard "type" according to the selected "language": ABCDE;

AZERTY; QWERTY or QWERTZ.



Enter the **"City"**, the **"Street"** and the **"Number"**, and confirm by pressing on the displayed suggestions.



Press **"OK"** to select the **"Guidance criteria"**.

And/or



Select **"See on map"** to choose the **"Guidance criteria"**.



Press **"OK"** to start guided navigation.

**i** Zoom in/out using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

## To a recent destination



Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the **"MENU"** button to access the secondary page.



Select **"My destinations"**.

Select the **"Recent"** tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the **"Guidance criteria"**.



Press **"OK"** to start guided navigation.

**i** Select **"Position"** to see the point of arrival on the map.

## To "Home" or "My work"



Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the **"MENU"** button to access the secondary page.



Select **"My destinations"**.

Select the **"Preferred"** tab.



Select **"Home"**.

Or



Select **"My work"**.

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

## To a contact



Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the **"MENU"** button to access the secondary page.



Select **"My destinations"**.

Select the **"Contact"** tab.

Select a contact in the list to start guided navigation.

## To points of interest (POI)

### Guided method:

Points of interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the **"MENU"** button to access the secondary page.



Select **"Points of interest"**.



Select the **"Travel"**, **"Leisure"**, **"Commercial"**, **"Public"** or **"Geographic"**

tab.

Or



Select **"Search"** to enter the name and address of a POI.



Press **"OK"** to calculate the route.


Or

### Intuitive method:


**i** You can only select this method of using the service if a network connection is active; this may be either a "network connection provided by the vehicle", if you use the Citroën Connect Box solution, or else a "network connection provided by the user" via a smartphone. In both cases, the system is automatically connected to the Internet, if network coverage permits.


 Press **Navigation** to display the main page.


Press the **"MENU"** button to access the secondary page.


 Select **"Search"**.


Press on the mode shown in the bottom right of the screen (On-Board or Connected) to change the "Database".

 Select the "Database" in "On-Board" mode (integrated into the map), or in "Connected" mode (connected to the Internet).

 Press the back arrow to confirm.


 Enter an address or the key words for the destination (POI).

 Press **"OK"** to start the search.

 Select the **"On the route"**, **"Around the vehicle"** or **"At destination"** tab to refine your search.


Select the desired address to calculate the route.


## To a point on the map


 Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.

 Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.

 Press this button to start guided navigation.

Or  
 Press this button to save the displayed address.


**i** A long press on a point opens a list of nearby POIs.

## To GPS coordinates


 Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Touch the screen with a finger to go to the next image.

 Press this button to display the world map.

Using the grid, select the desired country or region by zooming.


 Press this button to display or enter the GPS coordinates.


 A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the **"Latitude"** and **"Longitude"** coordinates.


Choose the type of coordinates:


DMS for: Degrees, Minutes, Seconds.

DD for: Degrees, Decimals.

 Press this button to start guided navigation.

Or  
 Press this button to save the displayed address.

OR  
 Press this button to enter the **"Latitude"** value using the virtual keypad.

And  
 Press this button to enter the **"Longitude"** value using the virtual keypad.

## TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

Available in some countries.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are based on a European standard for traffic information broadcasting via the RDS system on FM radio, sending traffic information in real time. The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away when routes are calculated, to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

**i** Danger zone alerts may or may not be displayed, depending on the applicable

legislation and subscription to the corresponding service.

## Connected navigation

### Connected navigation connection

Depending on version, vehicle trim level and subscription to online services and options.

#### Network connection provided by the vehicle



With the Citroën Connect Box solution, the system is automatically connected to the Internet and connected services, and does not require the user to provide a connection via their smartphone.

OR

#### Network connection provided by the user



For the list of compatible smartphones, visit the Brand's website in your country.

Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

As processes and standards are constantly changing, we recommend you

**update the smartphone operating system as well as the date and time on the smartphone and system**, to ensure that the communication process between the smartphone and the system functions correctly.

#### USB connection



Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

#### Bluetooth connection



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Connect-App" section).

#### Wi-Fi connection



Select a Wi-Fi network detected by the system and connect to it.

This function is only available if it has been activated either via the "Notifications" or via the "Applications" menu.



Press "**Notifications**".



Select Wi-Fi to activate it.

OR



Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".



Select the "**Secured**", "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.



Select a network.



Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" network Wi-Fi and the "**Password**".



Press "**OK**" to establish a connection between the smartphone and the

vehicle's system.

Usage restrictions:  
With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only available with a Wi-Fi connection. The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.

### Authorize sending information



Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**System configuration**".



Select the "**Private mode**" tab.

OR



Press "**Notifications**".



Press "**Private mode**".

THEN


 Activate or deactivate:


- "No data sharing except for company vehicles".
- "Only data sharing"
- "Sharing data and vehicle position"

## Settings specific to connected navigation

 Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

Press the **"MENU"** button to access the secondary page.

 Select **"Settings"**.

 Select the **"Map"** tab.

 Activate or deactivate:

- **"Allow declaration of danger zones"**.
  - **"Guidance to final destination on foot"**.
- These settings must be configured for each profile.


 Press **"OK"** to confirm your selection.


 Select the **"Alerts"** tab.


 Activate or deactivate:

- **"Advise of car park nearby"**.
- **"Filling station alert"**.
- **"Risk areas alert"** then press the warning icon (triangle) to configure the alerts.


- **"Give an audible warning"**.
- **"Advise proximity of POI 1"**.
- **"Advise proximity of POI 2"**.

 Press **"OK"** to confirm your selection.

 The "Notifications", located in the upper bar, can be accessed at any time.

 Danger zone alerts may or may not be displayed, depending on the applicable legislation and subscription to the corresponding service.

 When "TOMTOM TRAFFIC" appears, the services are available.


 The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.


A Connected Services pack:


- Weather,
- Filling stations,
- Car park,
- Traffic,
- POI local search.


A Danger area pack (optional).


## Declaration: "Risk areas alert"


 To send information about danger zones, select the option: **Allow declaration of danger zones**

 Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

 Press the **"Declare a new danger zone"** button located in the side bars or the upper bar of the touch screen (depending on equipment).

 Select the **"Type"** option to select the type of "Danger area".

 Select the **"Speed"** option and enter it using the virtual keypad.


 Press **"OK"** to save and send the information.

## Displaying fuel information


 Press **Navigation** to display the main page.

 Press this button to display the list of services.

 Press **"POI on map" to display the list of points of interest.**


 Press one of the buttons to search for **"Stations"**.

 Activate/deactivate **"Stations"**.










 Press this button to display a secondary page.

 Select the **"Settings"** tab.





 Select the desired fuel.


 Press **"OK"** to save.

## Displaying charging station details


-  Press **Navigation** to display the main page.
-  Press this button to display the list of services.
-  Press **"POI on map"** to display the list of points of interest.
-  Press one of the buttons to search for **"Stations"**.
-  Activate/deactivate **"Stations"**.
-  Press this button to display a secondary page.
-  Select the **"Settings"** tab.
-  Select the desired connector type.
-  Press **"OK"** to save.

## Displaying weather information

-  Press **Navigation** to display the main page.
-  Press this button to display the list of services.
-  Select **"View map"**.
-  Select **"Weather"**.

 Press this button to display basic information.


 Press this button to display detailed weather information.


 The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day. The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

## Applications

### USB sockets


Depending on equipment, for more information on the USB sockets compatible with **CarPlay®** or **Android Auto** applications, refer to the "Ease of use and comfort" section.

 For the list of compatible smartphones, visit the Manufacturer's website in your country.

 Synchronising a smartphone enables users to display applications that support the smartphone's CarPlay® or Android Auto technology on the vehicle's screen. For CarPlay® technology, the CarPlay® function must first be activated on the smartphone. Unlock the smartphone for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work.

As principles and standards are constantly changing, **we recommend keeping the smartphone's operating system up-to-date, together with the date and time on the smartphone and the system.**


## Connectivity

 Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press **"Connectivity"** to access the **CarPlay®** or **Android Auto** functions.

## CarPlay® smartphone connection


Depending on country.

 On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode. The **"CarPlay"** function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.


 Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

 Press **"Telephone"** to display the CarPlay® interface.


Or


 Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.



 From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the main page.


Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "CarPlay®" function.

 Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

 When the USB cable is disconnected and the ignition is switched off then back on, the system will not automatically switch to Radio Media mode; the source must be changed manually.

## Android Auto smartphone connection


Depending on country.

 Install the "**Android Auto**" application on the smartphone via "Google Play".

The "**Android Auto**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and compatible applications.




Connect the USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by the USB cable.

 From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the main page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "Android Auto" function.





Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

 During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain features are displayed.


Accept to start and complete the connection. Access to the different audio sources remains available in the margin of the Android Auto display, using the touch buttons located in the upper bar.

Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

 In Android Auto mode, the function that displays rolling menus by briefly pressing the screen with three fingers is disabled.


 There may be a pause before applications become available, depending on the quality of the network.

## Car Apps

 Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "**Car Apps**" to display the applications home page.

## Internet Browser


 Press **Applications** to display the main page.

Press "**Connectivity**" to access the "**Connected Apps**" function.


Press "**Connected Apps**" to display the browser home page.


 Select the country of residence.

 Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.


 Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

## Bluetooth connection®

 The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the smartphone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

 The Bluetooth function must be activated and the smartphone configured as "Visible to all".

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the smartphone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the smartphone.

 If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the smartphone.

## Procedure from the smartphone



Select the name of the system in the list of detected devices.

In the system, accept the connection request from the smartphone.

## Procedure from the system



Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Press **"Bluetooth connection"**.



Select **"Search"**.

The list of detected smartphones is displayed.



Select the name of the chosen smartphone in the list.



Depending on the type of smartphone, you may be prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

## Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the smartphone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **"Streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the smartphone),
- **"Mobile internet data"**.



The **"Mobile internet data"** profile must be activated for connected navigation (if

the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), after first activating smartphone connection sharing.



Select one or more profiles.

OK

Press **"OK"** to confirm.

## Wi-Fi connection

Network connection via the smartphone's Wi-Fi.



Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.



Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Select **"Wi-Fi network connection"**.



Select the **"Secured"**, **"Not secured"** or **"Stored"** tab.



Select a network.



Using the virtual keypad, enter the Wi-Fi network **"Key"** and **"Password"**.

OK

Press **"OK"** to establish the connection.



The Wi-Fi connection and Wi-Fi connection sharing are exclusive.

## Wi-Fi connection sharing

Depending on equipment.

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.



Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Select **"Share Wi-Fi connection"**.

Select the **"Activation"** tab to activate or deactivate Wi-Fi connection sharing.

And/or

Select the **"Settings"** tab to change the system's network name and password.

OK

Press **"OK"** to confirm.



To protect against unauthorised access and to make all systems as secure as possible, the use of a security code or a complex password is recommended.

## Managing connections



Press **Connect-App** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Select **"Manage connection"**.

With this function, you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

## Radio

### Selecting a station



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press "**Frequency**".



Press one of the buttons to perform an automatic search for radio stations.

Or



Move the slider to manually search for frequencies up or down.

Or



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Radio stations**" on the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".



Enter the values using the virtual keypad. First enter the units then click on the decimals field to enter the figures after the decimal point.



Press "**OK**" to confirm.

**!** Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket. The exterior environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode.

This phenomenon is perfectly normal in the context of radio wave transmission, and in no way indicative of an audio system malfunction.

### Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency. (refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".



Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

### Changing the waveband



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

To change the waveband, press "Band...", displayed at the top right of the screen.

### Activating/Deactivating RDS

RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies.



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/deactivate "**Station follow**".

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



RDS station tracking may not be available nationwide, as many radio stations do not cover 100 % of the country. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

### Displaying text information

The "Radio Text" function displays information transmitted by the radio station relating to the station or the currently playing song.



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".



Activate/deactivate "**Display radio text**".

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

### Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the

TA message can be heard. Normal play of the previously playing media resumes at the end of the message.

Select **"Announcements"**.

Activate/deactivate **"Traffic announcement"**.

**OK** Press **"OK"** to confirm.

## DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

### Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality sound.

The various "multiplexes/ensembles" offer a choice of radio stations organised in alphabetical order.

 Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press "Band ..." at the top right of the screen to display the **"DAB"** waveband.

### FM-DAB tracking

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.

When the digital radio signal is poor,

"FM-DAB auto tracking" enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).

 Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to go to the secondary page.


 Select **"Radio settings"**.


Select **"General"**.

Activate/deactivate **"FM-DAB Follow-up"**.

Activate/deactivate **"Station follow"**.


**OK** Press **"OK"**.


 If "FM-DAB auto tracking" is activated, there may be a time lag of a few seconds when the system switches to "FM" analogue radio, and in some cases a change in volume. When the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB". To minimise this time lag, storing radio stations in the "DAB" band is recommended.

 If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on "FM" ("FM-DAB" greyed out), or "FM-DAB auto tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out when the digital signal becomes too weak.

## Media

### USB port

 Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).


 To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory); this operation can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.

Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time. Playlists are updated whenever the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The audio system memorises these lists, which will subsequently load faster if they have not been changed.

### Auxiliary socket (AUX)

Depending on equipment

 Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the auxiliary jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been selected in the audio settings.

First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of the audio system.

Controls are managed via the portable device.

## Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Select "**SOURCES**".

Select the source.

## Watching a video

Depending on equipment/Depending on version/  
Depending on country.

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.



Video control commands are accessible only through the touch screen.



Press **Radio Media** to display the main page.

Select "**SOURCES**".



Select **Video** to start the video.



To remove the USB memory stick, press the pause button to stop the video, then remove the memory stick.

The system can play video files in the MPEG-4 Part 2, MPEG-2, MPEG-1, H.264, H.263, VP8, WMV and RealVideo formats.

## Streaming Bluetooth®

Streaming allows you to listen to the audio feed from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated.

First adjust the volume on the portable device (to a high level).

Then adjust the volume of the audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.

Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.



Once connected in streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

## Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.



The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audio books/podcasts).

The default classification used is by artist. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of the Apple® player.

## Information and advice

The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices and Apple® players via the USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.

Devices are managed using the audio system controls.

Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, if compatible.

The audio system will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions, at bit rates between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.

It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode. No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read. All ".wma" files must be standard WMA 9 files. The supported sampling rates are 32, 44 and 48 KHz.

To avoid reading and display problems, we recommend choosing file names less than 20 characters long that do not contain any special characters (e.g. " ? ; ù).

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).



We recommend using the original USB cable for the portable device.

## Telephone

### Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

**!** The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Consult the telephone user guide and the service provider to check which services are available.

**i** The Bluetooth function must be activated and the telephone configured as "Visible to all" (in the telephone settings).

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

**i** If the pairing procedure fails, we recommend deactivating and then reactivating the Bluetooth function on the telephone.

#### Procedure from the telephone

**✎** Select the system name in the list of detected devices.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

#### Procedure from the system



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.



Press **"Bluetooth search"**.

Or



Select **"Search"**.

The list of detected telephones is displayed.



Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

#### Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- **"Telephone"** (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- **"Streaming"** (streaming: wireless playing of audio files on the telephone),
- **"Mobile internet data"**.

**i** The **"Mobile internet data"** profile must be activated for connected navigation, after first activating smartphone connection sharing.



Select one or more profiles.



Press **"OK"** to confirm.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be prompted to accept the transfer of contacts and messages.

**i** The ability of the system to connect just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

**i** The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Visit the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

#### Automatic reconnection

On returning to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds after switching on the ignition, the pairing is established automatically (Bluetooth activated).

#### To modify the connection profile:



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the **"OPTIONS"** button to access the secondary page.



Select **"Bluetooth connection"** to display the list of paired devices.



Press the **"Details"** button.




Select one or more profiles.




Press **"OK"** to confirm.


## Managing paired telephones

This function lets you connect or disconnect a device or delete a pairing.

 Press **Telephone** to display the main page.


Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.


 Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.

 Press on the name of the telephone selected in the list to disconnect it.

Press again to connect it.


## Deleting a telephone

 Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.


 Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.


## Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

 Make a short press on the steering mounted telephone button to accept an incoming call.

And

 Make a long press


 on the steering mounted telephone button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**" on the touch screen.

## Making a call

 Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.

Park the vehicle.

Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

## Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

## Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.



Or press and hold



the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.



Select "**Call**".

## Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Or



Press and hold



the steering mounted telephone button.

Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the displayed list.



It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

## Managing contacts/entries



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Select "**Contact**".



Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.



Press the "**Telephone**" tab to enter the contact's telephone number(s).



Press the "**Address**" tab to enter the contact's address(es).



Press the "**Email**" tab to enter the contact's email address(es).



Press "**OK**" to save.



Press this button to sort contacts by Surname+first name or by First name+surname.

**i** The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

## Managing messages



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**All**", "**Incoming**" or "**Sent**" tab.



Select the details of the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.



Press "**Play**" to listen to the message.

**!** Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility between the smartphone and the onboard system. Some smartphones retrieve messages or email messages more slowly than others.

## Managing quick messages



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Delayed**", "**My arrival**", "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab, enabling you to create new messages.



Press "**Create**" to write a new message.



Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Transfer**" to select one or more recipients.



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.

## Managing email



Press **Telephone** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Incoming**", "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Play**" to start playing the message.



Access to email messages depends on the compatibility between the smartphone and the onboard system.

## Settings

### Audio settings



Press **Settings** to display the main page.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Then select "**Ambience**", "**Position**", "**Sound**", "**Voice**" or "**Ringtone**".



Press "**OK**" to save the settings.


**i** The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys® system) uses audio processing to adjust the sound quality according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speaker configuration.

**i** The **Ambience** setting (choice of 6 ambiances) as well as for **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source. Activate or deactivate "**Loudness**".



The "**Position**" settings (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources.

Activate or deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".

 Onboard audio: Arkamys Sound Staging® optimises the sound distribution inside the passenger compartment.

## Configuring profiles



Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**", "**Profile 2**", "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.



Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port.

Select the photograph.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.



The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.



Press this button to reset the selected profile.



Resetting the selected profile activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to link "**Audio settings**" with it.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Then select "**Ambience**", "**Position**"; "**Sound**", "**Voice**" or "**Ringtone**".



Press "**OK**" to save the selected profile's settings.

## Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: **Automatic scrolling**

Select "**Brightness**".



Move the slider to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or the instrument panel.



Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**System settings**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Select "**Factory settings**" to restore the initial settings.



Resetting the system to "Factory settings" activates English and degrees Fahrenheit and deactivates summer time.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the various modules installed in the system.

## Selecting the language



Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

## Setting the date



Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Date**".



Press this button to set the date.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Select the display format for the date.



Time and date setting is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.

## Setting the time



Press **Settings** to display the main page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the secondary page.



Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Time**".



Press this button to set the time using the virtual keypad.

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to set the time zone.



Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).



Activate or deactivate summer time (+1 hour).



Activate or deactivate GPS synchronisation (UTC).

**OK**

Press "**OK**" to confirm.



The system may not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

## Colour schemes

Depending on equipment/Depending on version.



As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the main page.



Select "**Color schemes**".



Select a colour scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.



Whenever the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

## Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning the system.

## Navigation

**I cannot enter the navigation address.**

The address is not recognised.

► Use the "intuitive method" by pressing the "Search..." button at the bottom of the "Navigation" page.

**The route calculation is not successful.**

The route settings may conflict with the current location (for example, if toll roads are excluded but the vehicle is on a toll road).

► Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.

**I am not receiving "Danger zone" alerts.**

You have not subscribed to the online services option.

► If you have subscribed to the option:

- a few days may elapse before the service is activated,
- services may not be selected in the system menu,
- online services are not active ("TOMTOM TRAFFIC" not shown on the map).

**The POIs do not appear.**

The POIs have not been selected.

► Set the zoom level to 200 metres (656 ft), or select POIs from the POI list.

**The "Danger zone" audible warning feature is not working.**

The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.

► Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the sound settings.

**The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.**

The route settings do not take account of TMC messages.

► Configure the "Traffic info" function in the route settings list (None, Manual or Automatic).

**I am receiving a "Danger zone" alert which is not on my route.**

As well as providing guided navigation, the system announces all "Danger areas" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger areas" located on nearby or parallel roads.

► Zoom the map to show the exact location of the "Danger area". You can select "On the route" to stop receiving warnings or decrease the warning duration.

**Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.**

On starting, a few minutes may elapse before the system begins to receive traffic information.

► Wait until traffic information is being received correctly (traffic information icons shown on the map).

In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.

This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.

**The altitude is not displayed.**

On starting, GPS initialisation may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.

► Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.

Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.

This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.

**My navigation is no longer connected.**

During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.

► Check that the online services are activated (settings, contract).

## Radio

**The reception quality of the radio station being listened to gradually deteriorates or the station presets are not working (e.g. no sound, "87.5" MHz is displayed).**

The vehicle is too far from the selected station's transmitter, or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.

► Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.

The aerial is missing or damaged (e.g. when going through a car wash or in an underground car park).

► Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

The surrounding area (e.g. hill, building, tunnel, underground car park, etc.) is blocking reception, including in RDS tracking mode.

This is a perfectly normal phenomenon, and is not indicative of an audio system malfunction.

**I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received.**

**The name of the radio station changes.**

The station is no longer received or its name has changed in the list.

Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example).

The system interprets these details as the station name.

► Press "Update list" in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.

## Media

**Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).**

Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the cataloguing time).

► Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.

**There may be an extended pause after inserting a USB stick.**

The system reads a variety of data (folder, title, artist, etc.). This can take from a few seconds to a few minutes.

This is perfectly normal.

**Some characters in information about the currently playing media may not be displayed correctly.**

The audio system is unable to process certain types of character.

► Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.

**Playback of streaming files does not start.**

The connected device does not automatically launch playback.

► Start playback from the device.

**Track names and playing times are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.**

The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.

## Telephone

**I am unable to connect my Bluetooth telephone.**

The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the device may not be visible.

► Check that the telephone has Bluetooth switched on.

► Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".

► Deactivate then reactivate the telephone's Bluetooth function.

The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.

► You can check the compatibility of the telephone on the Brand's website (services).

**Android Auto and/or CarPlay do not work.**

Android Auto and CarPlay may not activate if the USB cables are of poor quality.

► Use genuine USB cables to ensure compatibility.

**Android Auto and/or CarPlay do not work.**

Android Auto and CarPlay are not available in all countries.

► Check the list of supported countries via these websites: Google Android Auto or Apple.

**The volume of the telephone connected via Bluetooth is too low.**

The volume depends on both the system and the telephone.

► Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.

Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.

► Reduce ambient noise (e.g. close the windows, reduce ventilation, slow down).

**Some contacts are duplicated in the list.**

The options for synchronising contacts are: synchronise the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronisations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.

► Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".

**The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.**

Some telephones offer display options.

Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.

► Modify the telephone directory display settings.

**The system is not receiving SMS text messages.**

Bluetooth mode does not allow SMS text messages to be sent to the system.

## Settings

**When the treble and bass settings are changed, the ambience is deselected.**

**When the ambience is changed, the treble and bass settings are reset.**

Selecting an ambience imposes the treble and bass settings, and vice versa.

► Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.

**When the balance settings are changed, the distribution is deselected.**

**When the distribution setting is changed, the balance settings are deselected.**

Selecting a distribution setting imposes the balance settings, and vice versa.

► Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.

**There is a difference in sound quality between audio sources.**

To allow for optimal listening quality, the sound settings can be tailored to different audio sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.

► Check that the sound settings are appropriate to the sources listened to. We recommend setting the sound functions (Bass, Treble, Balance) to the middle position, setting the musical ambience to "None", setting loudness correction to "Active" in USB mode and "Inactive" in Radio mode.

► In all cases, after applying sound settings, adjust the volume level on the portable device (to a high level) first. Then adjust the volume level on the audio system.

**When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.**

When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery.

The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.

► Start the vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.

**The date and time cannot be set.**

Date and time settings are only available if satellite synchronisation is deactivated.

► Settings menu/Options/Date-Time Setting.  
Select the "Time" tab and deactivate "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

## Recording event data

Electronic control units are installed in your vehicle. These control units process data received from the vehicle's sensors, for example, or data they generate themselves or exchange with each other. Some of these control units are required for the correct operation of your vehicle, some others assist you while driving (driving or manoeuvring aids), while others provide comfort or infotainment functions.

The following contains general information about how data is processed within the vehicle.

You will find additional information about the specific data which is downloaded, stored and transmitted to third parties and what it is used for in your vehicle under the keyword "Data protection". This information is directly associated with the references for the functions in question contained in the corresponding vehicle handbook, or in the general terms and conditions of sale.

This information is also available online.

## Vehicle operating data

The control units process the data used for the operation of the vehicle.

This data includes, for example:

- Information about the state of the vehicle (e.g. speed, travel time, lateral acceleration, wheel rotation rate, fastened seat belts display).
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature, rain sensor, distance sensor).

As a general rule, this data is temporary, is not stored for longer than one operating cycle and is only used within the vehicle itself. The control units often record this data (including the vehicle's key). This function allows either the temporary or permanent storage of information about the state of the vehicle, stresses on components, servicing requirements, as well as events and technical errors.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, the data stored is as follows:

- Operating state of system components (e.g. filling level, tyre pressures, battery charge status).
- Faults and malfunctions in important system components (e.g. lamps, brakes).
- System reactions in specific driving situations (e.g. deployment of an airbag, triggering of stability control and braking systems).
- Information about events which have damaged the vehicle.
- For electric and rechargeable hybrid vehicles, the traction battery charge level and the estimated driving range.

In particular circumstances (e.g. if the vehicle has detected a malfunction), it may be necessary to record data which would otherwise simply not be stored.

When taking your vehicle in for servicing (e.g. repairs, maintenance), the stored operating data may be read along with the vehicle's identification number and used if necessary.

The personnel working for the servicing network

(e.g. garages, manufacturers) or third parties (e.g. roadside assistance agents) may read the vehicle's data. This also applies to work carried out under warranty and quality assurance measures.

This data is generally read via the OBD (On-Board Diagnostics) port fitted by law to the vehicle. It is used to report on the technical state of the vehicle or its components and facilitates the diagnosis of malfunctions, in compliance with warranty obligations and for quality improvement. This data, in particular the information relating to stress on components, technical events, operator errors and other malfunctions, is sent to the Manufacturer, if necessary, along with the vehicle's identification number. The Manufacturer's liability may also be engaged. The Manufacturer may also use the operating data taken from the vehicle for product recalls. This data may also be used to check the customer's warranty and any claims made under warranty.

Any malfunctions stored in the vehicle may be reset by an after-sales service company during servicing or repair work, or at your request.

## Comfort and infotainment functions

Comfort settings and personalised settings may be saved in the vehicle and modified or reinitialised at any time.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, this may include:

- Seat and steering wheel position settings.
- Chassis and air conditioning settings.
- Personalised settings such as the interior lighting.

You can enter your own data into the functions of your vehicle's audio and telematic system, as part of the selected functionalities.

Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, this may include:

- Multimedia data such as music, videos or photos to be read by an integrated multimedia system.
- Address book data to be used with an integrated hands-free system or with an integrated navigation system.
- Entered destinations.
- Data regarding the use of online services.

This data for the comfort and infotainment functions may be stored locally in the vehicle or saved to a device that you have connected to the vehicle (e.g. smartphone, USB memory stick or MP3 player). Data that you have entered yourself may be deleted at any time.

This data may also be transmitted outside the vehicle at your request, particularly when using online services in line with the settings that you have selected.

## Smartphone integration (e.g. Android Auto® or Apple® CarPlay®)

If your vehicle is equipped accordingly, you can connect your smartphone or another mobile device to the vehicle in order to operate it using the vehicle's integrated controls. Images and sounds from the smartphone can be transmitted through the audio and telematics system.

Specific information is simultaneously sent to your smartphone. Depending on the type of integration, this includes data such as location, day/night mode and other general information about the vehicle. For more information, please refer to the user instructions for the vehicle or the audio and telematics system.

Integrating a smartphone allows you to use its applications, such as a navigation app or music player. No other integration between the smartphone and the vehicle is possible, in particular active access to vehicle data. How the data is processed subsequently is determined by the supplier of the application being used. The ability to change settings depends on the application in question and on the operating system installed on your smartphone.

## Online services

If your vehicle is connected to a wireless network, data can be exchanged between your vehicle and other systems. Connection to a wireless network is made possible via a

transmitter located in your vehicle or a mobile device that you have provided (e.g. smartphone). The online services can be used via this wireless connection. These include online services and applications (apps) provided to you by the Manufacturer or other suppliers.

## Exclusive services

As regards the Manufacturer's online services, the corresponding functions are described by the Manufacturer in an appropriate medium (e.g. handbook, Manufacturer's website) and the information about data protection is provided. Personal data may be used for online services. The exchange of data for this purpose takes place over a secure connection, using for example the Manufacturer's dedicated computer systems. The collection, processing and use of personal data for the development of services are carried out solely on the basis of a legal authorisation, for example in the case of a legal emergency call system or a contractual agreement or else under a consent agreement. You can activate or deactivate the services and functions (some may be chargeable) and, in some cases, the vehicle's entire connection to the wireless network. This does not include the statutory functions and services such as the emergency or assistance call system.

## Third-party services

If you use online services provided by other (third-party) suppliers, these services are subject

to the responsibility, the data protection and the terms and conditions of use of the supplier in question. The Manufacturer often has no influence over the content exchanged in this regard.

Please therefore ensure that you are aware of the nature, extent and purpose of the collection and use of personal data as part of the third-party services provided by the service provider in question.



180° rear vision ..... 141

**A**

ABS ..... 76  
 Accelerated charging unit (Wallbox) ..... 151–152  
 Accessories ..... 73  
 Active Safety Brake ..... 127–130  
 Active suspension ..... 105  
 AdBlue® ..... 19, 169  
 AdBlue® tank ..... 170  
 Additive, Diesel ..... 167–168  
 Adjusting headlamps ..... 68  
 Adjusting head restraints ..... 44–45  
 Adjusting seat ..... 45–46  
 Adjusting the air distribution ..... 52–55  
 Adjusting the air flow ..... 52–55  
 Adjusting the date ..... 209, 231  
 Adjusting the height and reach of the steering wheel ..... 47  
 Adjusting the lumbar support ..... 45  
 Adjusting the seat angle ..... 45  
 Adjusting the seat belt height ..... 81  
 Adjusting the temperature ..... 52–53  
 Adjusting the time ..... 208, 232  
 Advanced Grip Control ..... 78  
 Advice on care and maintenance ..... 149, 172  
 Advice on driving ..... 7, 94–95  
 Airbags ..... 83–85, 87  
 Airbags, curtain ..... 84–85  
 Airbags, front ..... 83–84, 87  
 Airbags, lateral ..... 84–85

Air conditioning ..... 51–52, 55  
 Air conditioning, automatic ..... 53, 56  
 Air conditioning, dual-zone automatic ..... 53  
 Air conditioning, manual ..... 52, 54  
 Air intake ..... 53–55  
 Air vents ..... 51  
 Alarm ..... 38, 40  
 Android Auto connection ..... 223  
 Anti-lock braking system (ABS) ..... 76  
 Antitheft / Immobiliser ..... 29  
 Apple CarPlay connection ..... 205, 222  
 Applications ..... 223  
 Armrest, front ..... 60  
 Assistance call ..... 74–75  
 Assistance, emergency braking ..... 76, 129  
 Audible warning ..... 74  
 Audio streaming (Bluetooth) ..... 204, 227

**B**

Battery ..... 161  
 Battery, 12 V ..... 167, 185–189  
 Battery, ancillaries ..... 185  
 Battery, charging ..... 186–187, 189  
 Battery, remote control ..... 32–33  
 Blanking screen (snow shield) ..... 162  
 Blind ..... 41–43  
 Blind spot monitoring system, active ..... 136  
 Blind spot sensors ..... 135–136  
 BlueHDi ..... 19, 22, 167, 175  
 Bluetooth (hands-free) ..... 206, 228  
 Bluetooth (telephone) ..... 206–207, 228–229

Bodywork ..... 172  
 Bonnet ..... 164–165  
 Boot ..... 34–35, 38, 64  
 Brake discs ..... 168  
 Brake lamps ..... 184  
 Brakes ..... 168  
 Braking ..... 104  
 Braking assistance system ..... 76  
 Braking, automatic emergency ..... 127–130  
 Braking, dynamic emergency ..... 100–101  
 Brightness ..... 208  
 Bulbs (changing) ..... 182–184

**C**

Cable, audio ..... 226  
 Cable, Jack ..... 226  
 Capacity, fuel tank ..... 147  
 Care of the bodywork ..... 172  
 Central locking ..... 31  
 Changing a bulb ..... 182–184  
 Changing a fuse ..... 185  
 Changing a wheel ..... 176, 179  
 Changing a wiper blade ..... 71–72  
 Changing the remote control battery ..... 32  
 Changing to free-wheeling ..... 171  
 Charge level indicator (Rechargeable hybrid) ..... 21  
 Charger, induction ..... 59  
 Charger, wireless ..... 59  
 Charging cable ..... 153

Charging cable (Rechargeable hybrid) ..... 151–152, 156  
 Charging connector (Rechargeable hybrid) ..... 150, 155–157  
 Charging flap (Rechargeable hybrid) ..... 150, 155–157  
 Charging the traction battery (Rechargeable hybrid) ..... 21, 149, 155–157  
 CHECK ..... 22  
 Checking the engine oil level ..... 19  
 Checking the levels ..... 165–167  
 Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) ..... 177, 179  
 Checks ..... 165, 167–169  
 Checks, routine ..... 167–168  
 Child lock ..... 92–93  
 Children ..... 82, 88–89  
 Children (safety) ..... 92–93  
 Child seats ..... 82, 85–87  
 Child seats, conventional ..... 87, 92  
 Child seats, i-Size ..... 89, 92  
 Child seats, ISOFIX ..... 88–89, 92  
 Cigar lighter ..... 58  
 Cleaning (advice) ..... 149, 172–173  
 Closing the boot ..... 30, 34–35  
 Closing the doors ..... 30–31, 34  
 Collision Risk Alert ..... 127–128  
 Configuration, vehicle ..... 24, 26  
 Connected applications ..... 223  
 Connection, Bluetooth ..... 206–207, 223–224, 228–229  
 Connection, MirrorLink ..... 205  
 Connection, Wi-Fi network ..... 224

Connectivity ..... 222  
 Consumption figures ..... 25  
 Container, AdBlue® ..... 170  
 Control, emergency boot release ..... 35  
 Control, emergency door ..... 32  
 Control, heated seats ..... 47  
 Controls, steering mounted ..... 103  
 Control stalk, lighting ..... 65–66  
 Control stalk, wipers ..... 69–71  
 Control unit ..... 151–153, 156  
 Courtesy lamp ..... 61  
 Courtesy lamps ..... 61  
 Cover, load space ..... 62  
 Cruise control ..... 114–115, 117–119  
 Cruise control, adaptive ..... 119–120  
 Cruise control by speed limit recognition ..... 114–115  
 Cruise control, dynamic with Stop function ..... 114–115  
 Cup holder ..... 58

---

## D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) - Digital radio ..... 203, 226  
 Date (setting) ..... 209, 231  
 Daytime running lamps ..... 66  
 Deactivating the passenger airbag ..... 83, 87  
 Deadlocking ..... 28, 30  
 Deferred charging ..... 26, 157  
 Deferred charging (Rechargeable hybrid) ..... 25–26, 150, 155

Defrosting ..... 56  
 Defrosting, front ..... 56  
 Demisting ..... 56  
 Demisting, front ..... 56  
 Demisting, rear ..... 56  
 Demisting, rear screen ..... 56  
 Dials and gauges ..... 9–10  
 Digital instrument panel ..... 10–11  
 Dimensions ..... 197  
 Dipstick ..... 19, 165  
 Direction indicators ..... 66, 184  
 Domestic charging ..... 153  
 Domestic charging (Rechargeable hybrid) ..... 156–157  
 Door pockets ..... 58  
 Doors ..... 34  
 Driver's attention warning ..... 130–131  
 Driving ..... 94–95  
 Driving aids camera (warnings) ..... 111  
 Driving aids (recommendations) ..... 111  
 Driving economically ..... 7  
 Driving modes ..... 78, 105  
 Driving positions (storing) ..... 46  
 Dynamic stability control (DSC) ..... 77

---

## E

EBFD ..... 76  
 Eco-driving (advice) ..... 7  
 ECO mode ..... 105  
 Economy mode ..... 161  
 Electric windows ..... 41

Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) ..... 76  
 Emergency braking assistance (EBA) ..... 76  
 Emergency call ..... 74–75  
 Emergency switching off ..... 98–99  
 Emergency warning lamps ..... 73, 175  
 Emissions control system, SCR ..... 20, 169  
 Energy economy mode ..... 161  
 Energy flows ..... 25  
 Energy recovery ..... 21, 104  
 Engine ..... 169  
 Engine compartment ..... 164–165  
 Engine, Diesel ..... 147, 165, 175, 195  
 Engine, petrol ..... 106, 165, 194  
 Engines ..... 193–195  
 Environment ..... 7, 33  
 e-Save function (energy reserve) ..... 26  
 ESC (electronic stability control) ..... 76  
 Expanded traffic sign recognition ..... 115  
 Exterior lighting ..... 68

**F**

Fatigue detection ..... 130–131  
 Filling the AdBlue® tank ..... 167, 170  
 Filling the fuel tank ..... 147–148  
 Filter, air ..... 168  
 Filter, oil ..... 168  
 Filter, particle ..... 167–168  
 Filter, passenger compartment ..... 51, 167  
 Fitting a wheel ..... 180–181  
 Fitting roof bars ..... 163–164  
 Fittings, boot ..... 62

Fittings, interior ..... 58–59  
 Flap, charging ..... 157  
 Flap, fuel filler ..... 147–148  
 Flashing indicators ..... 66  
 Flat bed (towing) ..... 191  
 Floor, boot, adjustable ..... 63  
 Fluid, brake ..... 166  
 Fluid, engine coolant ..... 166  
 Foglamps, front ..... 65, 69, 183  
 Foglamps, rear ..... 65, 185  
 Folding the rear seats ..... 50  
 Frequency (radio) ..... 225  
 Fuel ..... 7, 147  
 Fuel consumption ..... 7, 21  
 Fuel tank ..... 147–148  
 Fuses ..... 185

**G**

Gauge, fuel ..... 147  
 Gearbox, automatic ... 9, 102–104, 107, 168, 186  
 Gearbox, manual ..... 9, 102, 107, 168  
 Gear lever ..... 102  
 Gear lever, manual gearbox ..... 102  
 Gear shift indicator ~ Gear efficiency indicator ..... 107  
 Glove box ..... 58  
 G.P.S. .... 219  
 Grab handles ..... 58

**H**

Hands-free access ..... 36–37  
 Hands-free tailgate ..... 36–38  
 Hazard warning lamps ..... 73, 175  
 Headlamp adjustment ..... 68  
 Headlamps, automatic dipping ..... 68–69  
 Headlamps, automatic illumination ..... 66–67  
 Headlamps, halogen ..... 68  
 Headlamps, main beam ..... 68  
 Head restraints, front ..... 44–45  
 Head restraints, rear ..... 49–50  
 Heating ..... 51, 54  
 Heating, programmable ..... 26, 57  
 High voltage ..... 149  
 Highway Driver Assist ..... 119  
 Hill Assist Descent Control (HADAC) ..... 79  
 Hill Descent Control ..... 79  
 Hill start assist ..... 106–107  
 Histogramme, fuel consumption ..... 25–26  
 Horn ..... 74

**I**

Ignition ..... 98, 229  
 Ignition on ..... 98  
 Ignition switch ..... 96–97  
 Immobiliser, electronic ..... 95  
 Indicator, AdBlue® range ..... 19  
 Indicator, coolant temperature ..... 19  
 Indicator, engine oil level ..... 19, 22  
 Indicators, direction ..... 66

Inflating tyres ..... 169, 197  
 Inflating tyres and accessories  
 (using the kit) ..... 177, 179  
 Information, vehicle ..... 9, 236  
 Infrared camera ..... 111  
 Instrument panel ..... 9, 9–11, 22, 22–23, 112  
 Intelligent Traction Control ..... 77  
 Internet browser ..... 220, 223  
 ISOFIX mountings ..... 88, 92

**J**

Jack ..... 177, 179, 226  
 Jump starting ..... 186

**K**

Key ..... 27, 29, 32  
 Key, electronic ..... 29–31  
 Keyless Entry and Starting ..... 29–30, 97–98  
 Key not recognised ..... 98–99  
 Key with remote control ..... 27, 95–96  
 Kit, hands-free ..... 206, 228  
 Kit, puncture repair ..... 176  
 Kit, temporary puncture repair ..... 176–179

**L**

Labels ..... 6  
 Labels, identification ..... 197

Lamp, boot ..... 64  
 Lamps, parking ..... 66  
 Lamps, rear ..... 184  
 Lams with Full LED technology ..... 69  
 Lane assist ..... 119, 123–125  
 Lane departure warning active ..... 131, 136  
 Leather (care) ..... 173  
 LEDs - Light-emitting diodes ..... 66, 183–184  
 Level, AdBlue® ..... 167  
 Level, brake fluid ..... 166  
 Level, Diesel additive ..... 167–168  
 Level, engine coolant ..... 19, 166  
 Level, engine oil ..... 19, 165  
 Levels and checks ..... 165–167  
 Level, screenwash fluid ..... 70, 167  
 Lighting-emitting diodes - LEDs ..... 66, 183–184  
 Lighting, cornering ..... 69  
 Lighting dimmer ..... 22  
 Lighting, exterior ..... 65, 68  
 Lighting, guide-me home ..... 28, 67  
 Lighting, interior ..... 61  
 Lighting, mood ..... 61  
 Lighting, welcome ..... 67  
 Loading ..... 62–63, 163  
 Load reduction mode ..... 162  
 Locating your vehicle ..... 28  
 Locking ..... 28–30  
 Locking from the inside ..... 31  
 Locking the doors ..... 31  
 Low fuel level ..... 147  
 Lumbar ..... 45

**M**

Mains socket (domestic network) ..... 151–152  
 Maintenance (advice) ..... 149, 172  
 Maintenance, routine ..... 112, 167, 169  
 Manoeuvring aids (recommendations) ..... 111  
 Markings, identification ..... 197  
 Massage function ..... 47  
 Massage, multi-point ..... 47  
 Mat ..... 60, 112  
 Memorising a speed ..... 119  
 Menu ..... 205  
 Menu, main ..... 25  
 Menus (audio) ..... 200–201, 212–213  
 Menu short cuts ..... 25  
 Messages ..... 230  
 Messages, quick ..... 230  
 Mirror, rear view ..... 48  
 Mirrors, door ..... 48, 56, 135  
 Mirror, vanity ..... 58  
 Misfuel prevention ..... 148  
 Mobile application ..... 26, 57, 155, 157  
 Motor, electric ..... 105–106, 149, 196  
 Motorised tailgate ..... 35–36, 38  
 Mountings, ISOFIX ..... 88, 92

**N**

Navigation ..... 217–219  
 Navigation, connected ..... 220–222  
 Net, high load retaining ..... 62–63

---

**O**

Obstacle detection ..... 136

Oil change ..... 165

Oil consumption ..... 165

Oil, engine ..... 165

On-board tools ..... 64, 175–177

Opening the bonnet ..... 164

Opening the boot ..... 29, 34

Opening the doors ..... 29, 34

---

**P**

Pads, brake ..... 168

Paint ..... 172, 197

Paint colour code ..... 197

Parcel shelf, rear ..... 62

Park Assist ..... 142–143

Parking brake, electric ..... 99–101, 168

Parking sensors, audible and visual ..... 136

Parking sensors, front ..... 137

Parking sensors, rear ..... 137

Passenger compartment temperature pre-conditioning (Rechargeable hybrid) ..... 26, 57

Personalisation ..... 10–11

Plates, identification ..... 197

Player, Apple® ..... 204, 227

Player, USB ..... 203, 226

Port, USB ..... 58, 203–204, 222, 226

Power ..... 21

Power indicator (Rechargeable hybrid) ..... 8, 21

Pressures, tyres ..... 169, 177, 197

Pre-tensioning seat belts ..... 82

Priming the fuel system ..... 175

Profiles ..... 208, 231

Programmable cruise control ..... 117

Programmable speed limiter ..... 115

Protecting children ..... 83, 85–89

Puncture ..... 177–179

---

**R**

Radar (warnings) ..... 111

Radio ..... 201–202, 225

Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting - DAB) ..... 203, 226

Range, AdBlue® ..... 19, 167

RDS ..... 202, 225

Reading lamps ..... 61

READY lamp ..... 164

Rear screen, demisting ..... 56

Rechargeable hybrid engine ..... 8, 25, 164, 191, 196

Rechargeable hybrid system ..... 5, 8, 25, 98, 106, 149

Recharging the battery ..... 186–187, 189

Recharging the traction battery ..... 153

Recharging the traction battery (Rechargeable hybrid) ..... 149, 155–157

Recirculation, air ..... 53–55

Reduction of electrical load ..... 162

Regeneration of the particle filter ..... 168

Regenerative braking (deceleration by engine braking) ..... 104

Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system ..... 110

Reinitialising the remote control ..... 33

Reminder, key in ignition ..... 97

Reminder, lighting on ..... 65–66

Remote control ..... 27–32

Remote functions ..... 157

Remotely operable functions (Rechargeable hybrid) ..... 26, 57

Removing a wheel ..... 180–181

Removing the mat ..... 60

Replacing bulbs ..... 182–184

Replacing fuses ..... 185

Replacing the air filter ..... 168

Replacing the oil filter ..... 168

Replacing the passenger compartment filter ..... 167

Reservoir, screenwash ..... 167

Resetting the trip recorder ..... 21–22

Reset trip ..... 23

Rev counter ..... 9–10

Reversing camera ..... 111, 138–140

Reversing lamps ..... 184

Roof bars ..... 163–164

Running out of fuel (Diesel) ..... 175

---

**S**

Safety, children ..... 83, 85–89

Saturation of the particle filter (Diesel) ..... 168

Screen, cold climate ..... 162

Screen menu map ..... 205

Screenwash .....	70	Starting the engine .....	96, 98	Technical data .....	194–196
Screenwash, front .....	70	Starting the vehicle .....	96–97, 103	Telephone .....	206–207, 228–230
Screenwash, rear .....	70–71	Starting using another battery .....	98, 186	Temperature, coolant .....	19
SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) .....	20, 169	State of charge, battery .....	25	Ticket holder .....	58
Seat angle .....	45	Station, radio .....	201–202, 225	Time (setting) .....	208, 232
Seat belts .....	80–82, 87	Stay, bonnet .....	164–165	TMC (Traffic info) .....	219
Seat belts, rear .....	81	Steering mounted controls, audio .....	199, 212	Tool box .....	64
Seats, electric .....	45–46	Steering wheel, adjustment .....	47	Tools .....	175–177
Seats, front .....	45–46	Stickers, customising ~ Stickers, expressive .....	173	Top 360 Vision .....	138, 140
Seats, heated .....	47	Stopping the vehicle .....	96–98, 103–104	Topping-up AdBlue® .....	170
Seats, rear .....	49–50, 86	Stop & Start .....	24, 51, 56, 107–109, 147, 164, 167, 188	Top Rear Vision .....	138–139
Selector, gear .....	102–104	Storage .....	58–59, 60–61	Top Tether (fixing) .....	88, 92
Sensors (warnings) .....	111	Storage box .....	64	Total distance recorder .....	21–22
Serial number, vehicle .....	197	Storage compartments .....	58	Touch screen .....	25, 57
Service indicator .....	18, 22	Storage wells .....	62, 64	Touch screen tablet .....	24
Servicing .....	18, 167, 169	Storing driving positions .....	46	Towball, quickly detachable .....	159–161
Settings, equipment .....	24, 26	Stowing rings .....	62	Towbar .....	77, 158
Settings, system .....	208, 231	Sunroof, panoramic .....	41–43	Towbar with quickly detachable towball .....	159–161
Shield, snow .....	162	Sunshine sensor .....	51	Towed loads .....	193–194, 196
Sidelamps .....	66, 184	Sun visor .....	58	Towing .....	191–192
Smartphone .....	26, 59	Suspension .....	169	Towing another vehicle .....	191–192
Snow chains .....	110, 162	Suspension with progressive hydraulic stops .....	105	Towing the vehicle .....	191–192
Snow screen .....	162	Switching off the engine .....	96	Traction battery charge .....	153
Socket, 12 V accessory .....	58, 62	Synchronising the remote control .....	33	Traction battery (Rechargeable hybrid) .....	21, 149–150, 155
Socket, auxiliary .....	204, 226	Tables of engines .....	195–196	Traction control (ASR) .....	77
Socket, Jack .....	226	Tank, fuel .....	147–148	Traction information (TMC) .....	219
Speed limiter .....	114–116, 119			Trailer .....	77, 158
Speed limit recognition .....	112, 114			Trailer stability assist (TSA) .....	77
Speedometer .....	9–10, 112			Trajectory control systems .....	76
Sport mode .....	105–106			Triangle, warning .....	175
Spotlamps, side .....	67			Trip computer .....	23–24
Stability control (ESC) .....	76–77				
Starting a Diesel engine .....	147				

Trip distance recorder ..... 21–22  
 Tyres ..... 169, 197  
 Tyre under-inflation detection ..... 109, 177

---

## U

Under-inflation (detection) ..... 109  
 Unlocking ..... 27, 29  
 Unlocking from the inside ..... 31  
 Unlocking the boot ..... 28, 30  
 Unlocking the doors ..... 31  
 Unlocking the tailgate ..... 28, 30  
 Updating the date ..... 209, 231  
 Updating the time ..... 208, 232  
 USB ..... 203–204, 222, 226

---

## V

Vehicle data recording and privacy ..... 236  
 Ventilation ..... 51, 54  
 Video ..... 227  
 Visibility ..... 56  
 Vision, 180° forward ..... 141  
 Voice commands ..... 214–217

---

## W

Wallbox (Rechargeable hybrid) .... 151–152, 156  
 Warning and indicator lamps ..... 11–12

Warning lamp, driver's seat belt not  
 fastened ..... 81  
 Warning lamps ..... 12, 22  
 Warning lamp, seat belts ..... 81  
 Warnings and indicators ..... 11–12  
 Washing ..... 112  
 Washing (advice) ..... 149, 172–173  
 Weights ..... 193–194  
 Welcome lighting ..... 28, 67  
 Wheel, spare ..... 169, 176–177, 179–180  
 Windscreen, heated ..... 56  
 Windscreen wipers ..... 70–71  
 Wiper blades (changing) ..... 71–72  
 Wiper, rear ..... 70–71  
 Wipers ..... 69, 71  
 Wipers, automatic rain sensitive ..... 71































































Automobiles CITROËN declares, in accordance with the provisions of European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End-of-Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproducing and translating this document, even partially, is strictly prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles CITROËN.

4DCONCEPT  
Groupe MAURY Imprimeur



 **IMPRIM'VERT®**

Printed in the EU  
02-22

Automobiles CITROËN

Siège social : 2-10, boulevard de l'Europe - 78300 POISSY

[www.citroen.com](http://www.citroen.com)

Société anonyme au capital de 159 000 000 € - R.C.S. VERSAILLES : 642 050 199



**ANG. 22C84.0040**

